The essentials of imaging



# **bizhub** 652/552

User's Guide Print Operations

# **Table of contents**

#### 1 Introduction

1.1	Welcome	1-3
1.1.1	User's guides	
1.1.2	User's Guide	
1.2	Conventions used in this manual	1-5
1.2.1	Symbols used in this manual	
	To use this machine safely Procedural instruction	
	Key symbols	
1.2.2	Original and paper indications	
	Original and paper sizes	
	Original and paper indications	

#### 2 Overview

2.1	Printer controller	2-3
2.1.1	Roles of the printer controller	
2.1.2	Flow of printing	
2.1.3	Control panel	
2.2	Operating environment	2-7
2.2.1	Connectable computers and operating system Windows Macintosh	
2.2.2	Interfaces used for connection Ethernet USB interface Connection diagram	
2.3	Setup procedure	
2.3.1	For network connection	
2.3.2	For local connection	

#### **3** Precautions for Installation

3.1	Introduction	3-3
3.2	Printer drivers compatible with respective operating systems	3-4
3.3	Connection methods selectable in each operating system	3-6
3.3.1	Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	. 3-6
3.3.2	Windows XP/Server 2003	. 3-7
3.3.3	Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6	. 3-7
3.3.4	Mac OS 9.2	. 3-8
3.3.5	NetWare	. 3-8

# 4 Manual Installation Using the Add Printer Wizard

4.1	Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	4-3
4.1.1	For network connection (LPR/Port 9100/SMB)	
	Installing the printer driver by searching for the printer using the Add Printer Wizard Installing the printer driver by creating a printer port	. 4-3
4.1.2	For network connection (IPP/IPPS) Settings for the machine	
	Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard	. 4-7

4.1.3	For network connection (Web service print) Settings for the machine	4-8 4-8
	Making the printer driver known from the Network window Installing the printer driver by specifying the IP address using the Add Printer Wizard	4-9
4.1.4	For local connection Making the installed printer driver known to the computer	
	Installing the printer driver when connecting the machine Updating the driver after connecting this machine	
4.2	Windows XP/Server 2003	4-14
4.2.1	For network connection (LPR/Port9100) Settings for the machine Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard	4-14
4.2.2	For network connection (SMB) Settings for the machine Installing the printer driver by specifying the printer using the Add Printer Wizard	4-16 4-16
4.2.3	For network connection (IPP/IPPS) Settings for the machine Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard	4-17 4-17
4.2.4	For local connection	4-19

# 5 Installation on Macintosh Computers

5.1	Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6	5-3
5.1.1	Installing the printer driver	5-3
5.1.2	Selecting and connecting a printer (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) Configuring the Bonjour settings Configuring the AppleTalk settings Configuring the LPR settings Configuring the IPP settings	5-4 5-5 5-6
5.1.3	Selecting and connecting a printer (OS X 10.2/10.3) Configuring the Rendezvous settings Configuring the AppleTalk settings Configuring the LPR settings	. 5-8 . 5-9 5-10
5.2	Mac OS 9.2	
5.2.1	Installing the printer driver	5-12
5.2.2	Selecting and connecting a printer	5-12

# 6 Installation when Using NetWare

6.1	NetWare	6-3
6.1.1	Network Settings	6-3
6.1.2	Configuring the Windows client	6-3

## 7 Uninstalling the Printer Driver

7.1	Windows	7-3
7.2	Macintosh	7-5
7.2.1	For Mac OS X	7-5
7.2.2	For Mac OS 9.2	7-5

## 8 Print function of PCL/PS/XPS drivers for Windows

8.1	Print operations	8-3
8.2	Default settings of the printer driver	8-5
8.2.1	Displaying the Properties window	8-5
8.2.2	[Configure] tab	8-5
8.2.3	[Settings] tab	8-7
8.2.4	Registering the default settings	8-8
8.3	Common Setting	8-9
8.4	Parameter details	3-11
8.4.1	My Tab	
8.4.2	[Basic] tab	3-13
8.4.3	[Layout] tab	3-15
8.4.4	[Finish] tab	3-16
8.4.5	[Cover Mode] tab	3-18
8.4.6	[Stamp/Composition] tab       8         Editing watermark       8         Editing overlay       8         Editing the copy security       8         Editing date/time and page number       8	3-21 3-22 3-23
8.4.7	[Quality] tab 8	
8.4.8	[Other] tab 8	3-28

# 9 Print Functions of Mac OS X

9.1	Print operations	9-3
9.2	Default settings of the printer driver	9-5
9.2.1	Option settings	
9.2.2	Registering the default settings	9-6
9.3	Common Setting	9-7
9.4	Adding a custom size	9-9
9.5	Parameter details	<b>Э-10</b>
9.5.1	[Page Attributes]	9-10
9.5.2	[Copies & Pages]	9-11
9.5.3	[Output Method] Checking the [Output Method] detail settings	Э-11 Э-13
9.5.4	[Layout / Finish]	9-14
9.5.5	[Paper Tray / Output Tray]	9-16
9.5.6	[Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave]	9-17
9.5.7	[Per Page Setting]	Э-19 Э-19
9.5.8	[Stamp / Composition]       9         Editing the copy security       9         Editing Date/Time       9         Editing Page Number       9         Editing Header/Footer       9	9-21 9-22 9-23 9-23
9.5.9	[Quality]	9-24

10.2         Default settings         10-4           10.2.1         Option settings         10-4           10.2.2         Registering the default settings         10-5           10.3         Parameter details         10-6           10.3         Parameter details         10-6           10.3.1         Page Attributes         10-6           10.3.2         Specifying the custom page sizes         10-6           10.3.3         General         10-7           10.3.4         Layout (Combination)         10-7           10.3.5         Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)         10-8           11         Ford Windows         11-3           11.1         Setting the printer driver         11-3           For Windows         11-4         11-2           Recalling a job from the control panel         11-4           11.2         Setting the printer driver         11-6           For Windows         11-7         11-2           Recalling a job from the control panel         11-4           11.2         Setting the printer driver         11-6           For Windows         11-7         11-8           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-11		10.1	Print operations	10-3
10.2.2       Registering the details       10-5         10.3       Parameter details       10-6         10.3.1       Page Attributes       10-6         10.3.2       Specifying the custom page sizes       10-6         10.3.3       General.       10-7         10.3.4       [Layout] (Combination)       10-7         10.3.5       Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)       10-8 <b>11</b> Function Details       11-3         11.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         For Windows       11-4       11-2         For Windows       11-4         For Windows       11-6         For Windows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-7         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-7         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         For Windows       11-7       11-7         Meen the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-11         11.3       Satue in the printer d		10.2	Default settings of the printer driver	10-4
10.2.2       Registering the details       10-5         10.3       Parameter details       10-6         10.3.1       Page Attributes       10-6         10.3.2       Specifying the custom page sizes       10-6         10.3.3       General.       10-7         10.3.4       [Layout] (Combination)       10-7         10.3.5       Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)       10-8 <b>11</b> Function Details       11-3         11.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         For Windows       11-4       11-2         For Windows       11-4         For Windows       11-6         For Windows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-7         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         For Mindows       11-6         For Mindows       11-7         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         For Windows       11-7       11-7         Meen the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-11         11.3       Satue in the printer d		10.2.1	Option settings	10-4
10.3.1         Page Attributes         10-6           10.3.2         Specifying the custom page sizes         10-6           10.3.3         General         10-7           10.3.4         [Layout] (Combination)         10-7           10.3.5         Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)         10-8           111 <b>Frunction Details</b> 11-3           11.1         Setting the printer driver         11-3           For Windows         11-3           For Mac OS X         11-4           11.2         Secure Print         11-6           11.4         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-6           11.2.1         Setting the printer driver         11-6           For Windows         11-7         11-2           Recalling a job from the control panel         11-7           11.2.8         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-7           11.2.9         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-1           11.3         Sate in User Box         11-13           11.3         Sate in User Box         11-14           11.3.1         Satting the printer driver         11-13           11.3         For Windows         11-17      <		10.2.2		
10.3.1         Page Attributes         10-6           10.3.2         Specifying the custom page sizes         10-6           10.3.3         General         10-7           10.3.4         [Layout] (Combination)         10-7           10.3.5         Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)         10-8           111 <b>Frunction Details</b> 11-3           11.1         Setting the printer driver         11-3           For Windows         11-3           For Mac OS X         11-4           11.2         Secure Print         11-6           11.4         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-6           11.2.1         Setting the printer driver         11-6           For Windows         11-7         11-2           Recalling a job from the control panel         11-7           11.2.8         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-7           11.2.9         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-1           11.3         Sate in User Box         11-13           11.3         Sate in User Box         11-14           11.3.1         Satting the printer driver         11-13           11.3         For Windows         11-17      <		10.3		
10.3.2         Specifying the custom page sizes         10-6           10.3.3         General         10-7           10.3.4         Layout (Combination)         10-7           10.3.5         Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)         10-8           11         Function Details         11-3           11.1         Proof Print         11-3           11.1.1         Setting the printer driver         11-3           For Windows         11-3           For Windows         11-4           11.2         Secure Print         11-6           11.2.1         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-6           11.2.1         Setting the printer driver         11-6           11.2.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-7           11.2.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-8           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-9           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]         11-11           11.3         Setting the printer driver         11-13           11.3         For Windows         11-14           11.3.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-15           11.4		10.3.1		
10.3.3       General.       10-7         10.3.4       [Layout] (Combination).       10-7         10.3.5       Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5).       10-8         11       Function Details       11-3         11.1       Proof Print.       11-3         11.1.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         11.1.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the control panel       11-4         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the control panel       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the control panel       11-7         11.2.2       Meen the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-14       11-32         For Windows       11-17       11-18         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-17 </td <td></td> <td>10.3.2</td> <td>5</td> <td></td>		10.3.2	5	
10.3.4       [Layout] (Combination)				
10.3.5       Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)				
11.1       Proof Print.       11-3         11.1.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         For Mac OS X.       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel.       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel.       11-4         11.2       Secure Print.       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         For Windows.       11-6         For Windows.       11-7         11.2.2       Recalling a job from the control panel.       11-6         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-11         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3       For Windows.       11-13         For Windows.       11-13         11.3       Setting the printer driver       11-13         11.3.1       Setting the control panel.       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel.       11-17         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified.       11-17         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled.       11-20         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function				
11.1.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         For Mac OS X       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-6         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-7         11.2.1       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3       For Windows       11-13         For Windows       11-14         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17 </td <td>11</td> <td>Functi</td> <td>on Details</td> <td></td>	11	Functi	on Details	
11.1.1       Setting the printer driver       11-3         For Mac OS X       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-6         11.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-7         11.2.1       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3       For Windows       11-13         For Windows       11-14         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17 </td <td></td> <td>11.1</td> <td>Proof Print</td> <td> 11-3</td>		11.1	Proof Print	11-3
For Windows.         11-3           For Mac OS X.         11-4           11.1.2         Recalling a job from the control panel.         11-4           11.2         Secure Print.         11-6           11.2.1         Setting the printer driver         11-6           For Windows.         11-6         11-6           For Windows.         11-6         11-7           11.2.2         Recalling a job from the control panel.         11-8           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-9           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]         11-11           11.3         Save in User Box         11-13           For Windows.         11-13         11-13           For Windows.         11-13         11-13           For Windows.         11-14         11-13           11.3.1         Setting the printer driver         11-17           For Windows.         11-17         11-17           For Windows.         11-17         11-17           For Windows.         11-17         11-17           For Windows.         11-17         11-17           For Mac OS X.         11-17         11-17           For Mac OS X. <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>-</td></t<>				-
11.1.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-4         11.2       Secure Print       11-6         11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         For Windows       11-6         For Mac OS X       11-7         11.2.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-8         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Setting the printer driver       11-13         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-14       11.3         For Windows       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Wando S X       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Wandows       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Windows       11-17 <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>				
11.2         Secure Print			For Mac OS X	11-4
11.2         Secure Print		11.1.2	Recalling a job from the control panel	11-4
11.2.1       Setting the printer driver       11-6         For Windows       11-7         11.2.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-8         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-15         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-19       11-19         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         11.6       ID & Print       11-20         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-21         11.6       ID & Print       11-20         11.6.2       Recalling a jo				
For Windows         11-6           For Mac OS X         11-7           11.2.2         Recalling a job from the control panel.         11-8           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-8           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]         11-11           11.3         Save in User Box         11-13           11.3         Setting the printer driver         11-13           For Windows         11-13           For Windows         11-14           11.3.1         Setting the printer driver         11-13           For Mac OS X         11-14           11.3.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-19           11.5         Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-20         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-21         11-20           I1.6.		=		
11.2.2       Recalling a job from the control panel.       11-8         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]       11-9         When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]       11-11         11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-13         For Mac OS X       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-15         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-17       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-20       11-20         For Windows       11-20       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-20       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-21       11-23         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-24       11-25 </td <td></td> <td>11.2.1</td> <td>•</td> <td></td>		11.2.1	•	
When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-9           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]         11-11 <b>11.3</b> Save in User Box         11-13           11.31         Setting the printer driver         11-13           For Windows         11-14           For Mac OS X         11-15 <b>11.4</b> Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-19 <b>11.5 Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-19         11-19           <b>11.5 Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled</b>         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-20         For Mac OS X         11-21           <b>11.6 ID &amp; Print 11-21</b>         11-6         <b>ID &amp; Print</b>         11-23           For Mac OS X         11-23         11-23         11-24         11-23           <b>11.6.1</b>         Setting the printer driver         11-23         11-25           <b>11.6.2</b>         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-25         11-26     <!--</b--></b>			For Mac OS X	11-7
When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]         11-9           When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]         11-11           11.3         Save in User Box         11-13           11.3.1         Setting the printer driver         11-13           For Windows         11-14           11.3.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-15           11.4         Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified         11-17           For Windows         11-19         11-19           11.5         Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled         11-20           11.5.1         Setting the printer driver         11-21           11.6         ID & Print         11-21         11-6           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel </td <td></td> <td>11.2.2</td> <td>Recalling a job from the control panel</td> <td> 11-8</td>		11.2.2	Recalling a job from the control panel	11-8
11.3       Save in User Box       11-13         11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-13         For Mac OS X       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-15         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-19         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled       11-20         I1.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         For Windows       11-20       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-20       11-20         I1.6       ID & Print       11-20         For Windows       11-21       11-23         I1.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-25       11-26         Printing a job from the control panel       11-26 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>				
11.3.1       Setting the printer driver       11-13         For Windows       11-13         For Mac OS X       11-14         11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-15         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-19         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         For Windows       11-20       11-20         For Wac OS X       11-20       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-23       11-24         For Windows       11-23       11-24         For Wac OS X       11-25       11-6         ID & Print       11-25       11-26         For Mac OS X       11-25       11-26         Printing a job from the control panel       11-26 <td></td> <td></td> <td>When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]</td> <td> 11-11</td>			When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]	11-11
For Windows         11-13           For Mac OS X         11-14           11.32         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-15           11.4         Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified         11-17           For Windows         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-17           For Windows         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-17           For Mac OS X         11-19           11.5         Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled         11-20           11.5.1         Setting the printer driver         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-20         11-21           11.6         ID & Print         11-22           For Mac OS X         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Windows         11-23           For Windows         11-23           For Mac OS X         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Windows         11-25           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]         1		11.3	Save in User Box	11-13
For Mac OS X		11.3.1	Setting the printer driver	11-13
11.3.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-15         11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-19         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         For Windows       11-21         11.6       ID & Print.       11-23         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23       11-23         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23       11-24         11.6.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-25         11.6.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-26         Entering the user information and printing       11-26         Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]       11-27         Logging in using the authentication unit       11-29         11.7       Printing from a cellular phone or PD				-
11.4       Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified       11-17         For Windows       11-17         For Mac OS X       11-19         11.5       Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled       11-20         11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         For Windows       11-20         For Windows       11-20         For Windows       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-20         For Mac OS X       11-21         11.6       ID & Print       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23         11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-23         For Mac OS X       11-25         11.6.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-26         Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]       11-27         Logging in using the authentication unit       11-29         11.7       Printing from a cellular phone or PDA       11-30         11.7.1       Operating environment       11-30         11.7.2       Printing a document       11-30         11.7.2       Prin			For Mac OS X	11-14
For Windows.         11-17           For Mac OS X.         11-19 <b>11.5 Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled 11-20</b> 11.5.1         Setting the printer driver         11-20           For Windows.         11-20           For Windows.         11-20           For Mac OS X.         11-20           For Mac OS X.         11-21 <b>11.6 ID &amp; Print 11-23</b> For Mac OS X.         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Windows.         11-23           For Mac OS X.         11-25           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]         11-27           Logging in using the authentication unit         11-29 <b>11.7 Printing from a cellular phone or PDA</b> 11-30           11.7.1         Operating environment         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-30		11.3.2	Recalling a job from the control panel	11-15
For Mac OS X		11.4		
11.5         Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled         11-20           11.5.1         Setting the printer driver         11-20           For Windows         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-21           11.6         ID & Print         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Windows         11-23           For Mac OS X         11-25           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           Entering the user information and printing         11-26           Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]         11-27           Logging in using the authentication unit         11-29           11.7         Printing from a cellular phone or PDA         11-30           11.7.1         Operating environment				
11.5.1       Setting the printer driver       11-20         For Windows       11-20         For Mac OS X.       11-21 <b>11.6 ID &amp; Print 11-23</b> 11.6.1       Setting the printer driver       11-23         For Windows       11-23         For Windows       11-23         For Windows       11-23         For Windows       11-23         For Mac OS X.       11-23         For Mac OS X.       11-23         For Mac OS X.       11-25         11.6.2       Recalling a job from the control panel       11-26         Entering the user information and printing.       11-26         Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]       11-27         Logging in using the authentication unit       11-29 <b>11.7 Printing from a cellular phone or PDA</b> 11-30         11.7.1       Operating environment       11-30         11.7.2       Printing a document.       11-33         11.8 <b>Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user</b> 11-33         11.8.1       Settings for the machine       11-35         11.8.2       Setting the printer driver       11-35         For Windows       <				
For Windows         11-20           For Mac OS X         11-21 <b>11.6 ID &amp; Print 11-23 11.6 Setting the printer driver 11-23 11.6.1</b> Setting the printer driver <b>11-23 11.6.1</b> Setting the printer driver <b>11-23 11.6.1</b> Setting the printer driver <b>11-23</b> For Windows         11-23           For Mac OS X         11-25 <b>11.6.2</b> Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           Entering the user information and printing         11-26           Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]         11-27           Logging in using the authentication unit         11-29 <b>11.7 Printing from a cellular phone or PDA 11-30</b> 11.7.1         Operating environment         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-33           11.8         Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user <b>11-33</b> 11.8.1         Settings for the machine			•	
For Mac OS X.         11-21           11.6         ID & Print.         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Mac OS X.         11-23           11.6.1         Setting the printer driver         11-23           For Mac OS X.         11-25           11.6.2         Recalling a job from the control panel         11-26           Entering the user information and printing.         11-26           Printing the user information and printing.         11-27           Logging in using the authentication unit         11-29           11.7         Printing from a cellular phone or PDA         11-30           11.7.1         Operating environment         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-30           11.7.2         Printing a document         11-33           11.8         Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user         11-33           11.8.1         Settings for the machine         11-35           11.8.2         Setting the printer driver         11-35		11.5.1		
11.6         ID & Print				
11.6.1Setting the printer driver11-23 For Windows11-23 11-2516.2Recalling a job from the control panel11-26 Entering the user information and printing11-26 Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]11-27 11-27 Logging in using the authentication unit11.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11-30 11.7.111.7.2Printing a document11-3011.7.3Printing a document11-3011.7.4Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-3311.8.1Settings for the machine11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35				
For Windows11-23For Mac OS X11-2511.6.2Recalling a job from the control panel11-26Entering the user information and printing11-26Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]11-27Logging in using the authentication unit11-2911.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11-3011.7.1Operating environment11-3011.7.2Printing a document11-3011.7.3Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-3311.8.1Settings for the machine11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35		-		
For Mac OS X.11-2511.6.2Recalling a job from the control panel		11.6.1		
11.6.2Recalling a job from the control panel11-26Entering the user information and printing.11-26Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]11-27Logging in using the authentication unit11-29 <b>11.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11-30</b> 11.7.1Operating environment11-3011.7.2Printing a document11-3011.7.3 <b>Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-33</b> 11.8.1Settings for the machine11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35				
Entering the user information and printing.11-26Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]11-27Logging in using the authentication unit.11-29 <b>11.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11-30</b> 11.7.1Operating environment11-3011.7.2Printing a document.11-3011.7.3 <b>Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-33</b> 11.8.1Settings for the machine.11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35		44.0.0		
Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]11-27Logging in using the authentication unit.11-2911.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11.7.1Operating environment11.7.2Printing a document.11.8Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-3311.8.1Settings for the machine11-35For Windows11-35		11.6.2		
Logging in using the authentication unit11-2911.7Printing from a cellular phone or PDA11-3011.7.1Operating environment11-3011.7.2Printing a document11-3011.8Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user11-3311.8.1Settings for the machine11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35				
11.7.1       Operating environment       11-30         11.7.2       Printing a document       11-30         11.8       Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user       11-33         11.8.1       Settings for the machine       11-33         11.8.2       Setting the printer driver       11-35         For Windows       11-35				
11.7.1       Operating environment       11-30         11.7.2       Printing a document       11-30         11.8       Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user       11-33         11.8.1       Settings for the machine       11-33         11.8.2       Setting the printer driver       11-35         For Windows       11-35		11.7	Printing from a cellular phone or PDA	11-30
11.7.2Printing a document				
11.8Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user.11-3311.8.1Settings for the machine.11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35				
11.8.1Settings for the machine11-3311.8.2Setting the printer driver11-35For Windows11-35			-	
11.8.2       Setting the printer driver       11-35         For Windows       11-35		-		
For Windows 11-35		-	-	
		11.0.2		

10 Print Functions of Mac OS 9.2

11.9	Banner printing function	11-37
11.9.1	Paper Applicable paper	
11.9.2	Printer drivers and supported operating systems	11-37
11.9.3	Configuring the printer driver For Windows For Mac OS X	11-37
11.9.4	Printing	11-39

# **12** Settings on the Control Panel

12.1	Basic operations of User Settings	. 12-3
12.1.1	Displaying the User Settings screen	12-3
12.2	User settings	. 12-5
12.2.1	PDL Setting	12-5
12.2.2	Number of Copies	12-6
12.2.3	Original Direction	12-7
12.2.4	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	12-8
12.2.5	A4/A3<->LTR/LGR Auto Switch	12-9
12.2.6	Banner Sheet Setting	12-10
12.2.7	Binding Direction Adjustment	12-11
12.2.8	Line Width Adjustment	12-12
12.2.9	Gray Background Text Correction	12-13
12.2.10	Paper Tray	12-14
12.2.11	Paper Size	12-15
12.2.12	2-Sided Print	12-16
12.2.13	Binding Position	12-17
12.2.14	Staple	12-18
12.2.15	Punch	12-19
12.2.16	Banner Sheet Paper Tray	12-20
12.2.17	Font Settings	12-21
12.2.18	Symbol Set	12-22
12.2.19	Font Size	12-23
12.2.20	Line/Page	12-24
12.2.21	CR/LF Mapping	12-25
12.2.22	Print PS Errors	
12.2.23	Verify XPS Digital Signature	12-27
12.2.24	Print Reports	12-28
12.2.25	TIFF Image Paper Setting	
12.2.26	Link File Error Notification	
12.2.27	Use Proxy Server	12-32
12.2.28	Print	
12.2.29	Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification (Half-Fold Specification)	12-35
12.3	Basic operations in Administrator Settings	
12.3.1	Displaying the Administrator Settings screen	
12.4	Administrator Settings	
12.4.1	Print/Fax Output Setting	12-38
12.4.2	Output Tray Settings	12-39
12.4.3	Delete Secure Print Documents	12-40
12.4.4	Auto Delete Secure Document	12-41
12.4.5	ID & Print Delete Time	12-42
12.4.6	ID & Print Delete after Print Setting	
12.4.7	Skip Job Operation Settings	
12.4.8	ID & Print Settings	12-45
12.4.9	ID & Print Operation Settings	12-46
12.4.10	Default Operation Selection	12-47

	12.4.11	Print without Authentication	12-49
	12.4.12	I/F timeout setting	12-50
	12.4.13	Print XPS Errors	12-51
	12.4.14	PSWC Direct Print	12-52
	12.4.15	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	12-53
	12.4.16	Configuring Authentication under OpenAPI Settings	12-55
	12.4.17	Configuring the cellular phone or PDA settings	12-56
	12.4.18	Print Data Capture	12-57
	12.4.19	Secure Print Only	12-58
	12.4.20	Driver Password Encryption Setting	12-59
13	PageS	cope Web Connection	
	13.1	Using PageScope Web Connection	13-3
	13.1.1	Operating environment	
	13.1.2	Accessing PageScope Web Connection	
	13.1.3	Web browser cache	
		For Internet Explorer	
		For Netscape Navigator	
		For Mozilla Firefox	
	13.1.4	Online help function	
	13.2	Login and Logout	
	13.2.1	Login and logout flows	
		When user authentication or account track is not enabled When User Authentication or Account Track is enabled	
	13.2.2	Logout	
	13.2.3	Login Login options	
		Logging in as a public user	
		Logging in as a registered user	
		Logging in to the administrator mode	
		Display mode in administrator mode	
		Logging in as the User Box Administrator	13-13
	13.3	Structure of pages	13-14
	13.4	Overview of the user mode	
	13.4.1	Information	13-16
	13.4.2	Job	13-17
	13.4.3	User Box	13-17
	13.4.4	Direct print	13-18
	13.4.5	Address Registration	13-19
	13.4.6	Customize	13-19
	13.5	Administrator mode overview	13-20
	13.5.1	Maintenance	13-20
	13.5.2	System Settings	13-21
	13.5.3	Security	

13.5.4

13.5.5

13.5.6

13.5.7

13.5.8

13.5.9

13.5.10

14	Troub	leshooting	
	14.1	Cannot print	14-:
	14.2	Cannot configure the settings/Cannot print according to the settings	14-{
	14.2.1	The printer driver settings have no effect	14-8
	14.2.2	Others	
	14.2.3	Error message	
15	Appen	dix	
	15.1	Product specifications	15-:
	15.2	Printing reports	15-7
	15.2.1	Configuration page	15-7
	15.2.2	PCL font list	15-8
	15.2.3	PS font list	15-9
	15.2.4	GDI demo page	15-10
	15.3	PPD driver (For Linux and applications)	15-1 <sup>-</sup>
	15.3.1	PPD driver types	15-1 <sup>-</sup>
	15.3.2	PPD driver for Linux	
		Registering the PPD driver for Linux	
		Configuring the PPD driver for Linux Registering the PPD driver for OpenOffice	
		Printing with OpenOffice	
	15.3.3	PPD driver for applications	
	10.0.0	How to print	
	15.4	If the bit number differs between the server operating system and client oper 13	rating system. 15
	15.4.1	Installing an additional driver	15-13
	15.5	Glossary	15-14

#### 16 Index

16.1	Index by item	16-3
16.2	Index by button	16-6



# 1 Introduction

# 1.1 Welcome

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This User's Guide describes the functions, operating instructions, precautions for correct operation, and simple troubleshooting guidelines of this machine. In order to obtain maximum performance from this product and use it effectively, please read this User's Guide as necessary.

## 1.1.1 User's guides

User's guide	Overview
[Quick Guide Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Opera- tions]	This manual describes operating procedures and the functions that are most frequently used in order to en- able you to begin using this machine immediately. This manual also contains notes and precautions that should be followed to ensure safe usage of this ma- chine and describes details on trademarks and copy- rights. Please be sure to read this manual before using this machine.
[User's Guide Copy Operations]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on copy mode operations and the settings of this machine.</li> <li>Specifications of originals and copy paper</li> <li>Copy function</li> <li>Maintaining this machine</li> <li>Troubleshooting</li> </ul>
[User's Guide Enlarge Display Operations]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on operating procedures of the enlarge display mode.</li> <li>Copy function</li> <li>Scanning function</li> <li>G3 fax function</li> <li>Network fax function</li> </ul>
[User's Guide Print Operations]	<ul><li>This manual describes details on printer functions.</li><li>Printer function</li><li>Setting the printer driver</li></ul>
[User's Guide Box Operations]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on the boxed functions using the hard disk.</li> <li>Saving data in user boxes</li> <li>Retrieving data from user boxes</li> <li>Transferring and printing data from user boxes</li> </ul>
[User's Guide Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on transmitting scanned data.</li> <li>E-mail TX, FTP TX, SMB TX, Save in User Box, WebDAV TX, Web Services</li> <li>G3 fax</li> <li>IP Address Fax, Internet Fax</li> </ul>
[User's Guide Fax Driver Operations]	<ul><li>This manual describes details on the fax driver function that transmits faxes directly from a computer.</li><li>PC-FAX</li></ul>
[User's Guide Network Administrator]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on setting methods for each function using the network connection.</li> <li>Network settings</li> <li>Settings using PageScope Web Connection</li> </ul>

User's guide	Overview
[User's Guide Advanced Function Operations]	<ul> <li>This manual describes details on functions that become available by registering the optional license kit and by connecting to an application.</li> <li>Web browser function</li> <li>Image panel</li> <li>PDF Processing Function</li> <li>Searchable PDF</li> <li>My panel and My address functions</li> </ul>

#### 1.1.2 User's Guide

This User's Guide is intended for users ranging from those using this machine for the first time to administrators.

It describes basic operations, functions that enable more convenient operations, maintenance procedures, simple troubleshooting operations, and various setting methods of this machine.

Note that basic technical knowledge about the product is required to enable users to perform maintenance work or troubleshooting operations. Limit your maintenance and troubleshooting operations to the areas explained in this manual.

Should you experience any problems, please contact your service representative.



#### 1.2.1 Symbols used in this manual

Symbols are used in this manual to express various types of information.

The following describes each symbol related to correct and safe usage of this machine.

#### To use this machine safely

#### **▲** WARNING

This symbol indicates that a failure to heed the instructions may lead to death or serious injury.

#### **▲** CAUTION

This symbol indicates that negligence of the instructions may lead to mishandling that may cause injury
or property damage.

#### NOTICE

This symbol indicates a risk that may result in damage to this machine or documents. Follow the instructions to avoid property damage.

#### **Procedural instruction**

- ✓ This check mark indicates an option that is required in order to use conditions or functions that are prerequisite for a procedure.
- 1 This format number "1" represents the first step.
- 2 This format number represents the order of serial steps.
  - → This symbol indicates a supplementary explanation of a procedural instruction.

The operation procedures are described using illustrations.

→ This symbol indicates transition of the control panel to access a desired menu item.



This symbol indicates a desired page.

#### Reference

This symbol indicates a reference.

View the reference as required.

#### Key symbols

#### []

Key names on the touch panel and computer screen, or manual names are indicated by these brackets.

#### Bold text

width (Y).

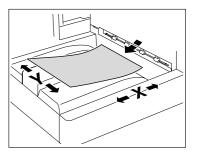
Key names, part names, product names and option names on the control panel are indicated in bold text.

#### 1.2.2 Original and paper indications

#### Original and paper sizes

The following explains the indication for originals and paper described in this manual.

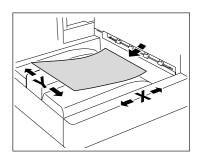
When indicating the original or paper size, the Y side represents the width and the X side the length.



#### **Original and paper indications**

 $\square$  indicates the paper size with the length (X) being longer than the width (Y).

indicates the paper size with the length (X) being shorter than the





# 2 Overview

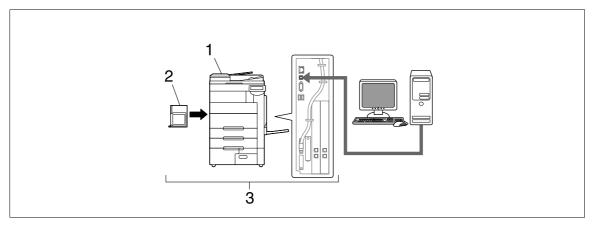
This chapter describes the overview and connection environment of the printer controller that provides the printer function.

# 2.1 Printer controller

The printer controller is a device that enables the printing and network printing functions on this machine.

#### 2.1.1 Roles of the printer controller

Incorporating the printer controller enables this machine to function as a printing system, allowing printing using applications on the computer connected to this machine. When using this machine as a network printer, you can print using applications on the computer.



- 1. This machine
- 2. Printer controller
- 3. Printing system

The printer controller provides the following functions.

- Printing data sent from a printer driver on a computer
- Support of network protocols including TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), IPX/SPX, and AppleTalk (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5)
- Printing via a network using Web service (Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2), SMB (Windows), LPR, or IPP printing
- Configuring settings for this machine and the printer controller from a client computer via the network (using a Web browser)
- Control of the number of pages to be printed (the User Authentication and Account Track functions)
- Fax operations using a computer (PC-FAX transmission)

#### Reference

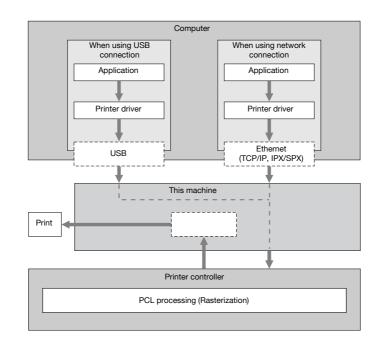
To use the fax function, the optional **Fax Kit** is required. For details on the PC-FAX transmission, refer to the [User's Guide Fax Driver Operations].

#### 2.1.2 Flow of printing

The following outlines the flow of operations for using this printing system as a printer.

Print data sent from an application is received by the printer driver.

The data is sent to the machine via the USB interface for USB connection or via Ethernet (TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk) for network connection. Then the data is passed from the machine to the printer controller. The printer controller rasterizes images (expands output target characters and images to bitmap data). This data is printed from this machine.



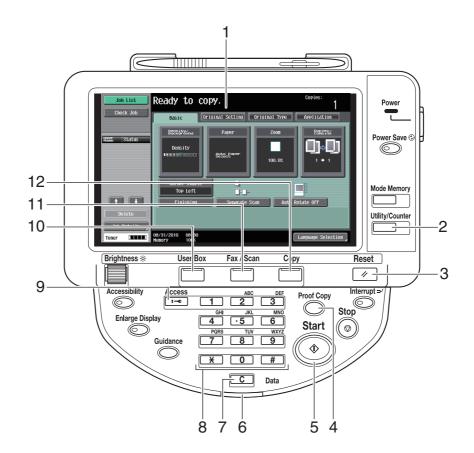
While this machine is operating as a printer, originals can be scanned using the copy function or network scan function. To use the copy function of this machine, press the **Copy** key on the control panel.

When a print job is received during copying, the data is stored in the memory of this machine. When the copying is completed, the print job is automatically printed.

#### 2.1.3 Control panel

The printer driver settings are mainly configured on the computer. However, printing the font list and configuring the printer controller settings and default print settings are available using the control panel of this machine.

The following describes the important keys used for the printer function.



No.	Name	Description
1	Touch Panel	Various screens and messages are displayed. Configure various settings by directly pressing the touch panel.
2	Utility/Counter	Press this key to display the [Utility] screen and the Meter Count screen.
3	Reset	Press this key to reset all settings (except programmed set- tings) entered using the control panel or touch panel.
4	Proof Copy	Press this key to perform proof printing when a proof print job is stored.
5	Start	Press this key to start the operation of the selected function. When this machine is ready to begin the operation, the indi- cator on the <b>Start</b> key lights up in blue. If the indicator on the <b>Start</b> key lights up in orange, the operation cannot begin.
6	Data Indicator	Flashes in blue while a print job or fax is being received. Lights up in blue when a print job or fax is queued to be print- ed or while it is being printed.
7	C (Clear)	Press this key to erase a value entered using the keypad or characters entered from the keyboard on the screen.
8	Keypad	Press to enter numbers. Use the keypad to enter the admin- istrator password or other setting values.

No.	Name	Description
9	Access	If user authentication and account track is enabled, press this key after entering the user name and password (for user au- thentication) or the account name and password (for account track) in order to use this machine.
10	User Box	Press this key to enter User Box mode. While the machine is in User Box mode, the indicator on the <b>User Box</b> key lights up in green. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Box Oper- ations].
11	Fax/Scan	Press this key to enter Fax/Scan mode. While the machine is in Fax/Scan mode, the indicator on the <b>Fax/Scan</b> key lights up in green. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].
12	Сору	Press this key to enter Copy mode (The machine is in Copy mode in default). While the machine is in Copy mode, the indicator on the <b>Copy</b> key lights up in green. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

#### Reference

2

- The default print settings can be changed in the [Utility] mode.
- You can use this machine as a printer in either of User Box, Fax/Scan, and Copy modes.

## Reference

For details on proof printing, refer to page 11-3.

# 2.2 Operating environment

This section describes the system requirements for using this printing system and the interfaces used for connection.

#### 2.2.1 Connectable computers and operating system

Make sure that the computer to be connected meets the following conditions.

#### Windows

#### Windows

Operating system	The supported OS varies depending on the type of printer driver. For details, re- fer to page 3-4.
CPU	Any processor of the same or higher specifications as recommended for your operating system
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system Sufficient memory resource is required for your operating system and the appli- cations to be used.
Drive	DVD-ROM drive

#### Macintosh

#### Macintosh

Operating system	Mac OS 9.2/OS X (10.2.8, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.6)
CPU	PowerPC, Intel Processor (Intel Processor must be Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6 only)
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system
Drive	DVD-ROM drive

#### 2.2.2 Interfaces used for connection

To connect this printing system to a computer, the following interfaces can be used.

#### Ethernet

Use this interface to use this printing system via a network connection. It supports 1000Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 10Base-T standards. In addition, TCP/IP (LPD/LPR, IPP, SMB), Web services, IPX/SPX (NetWare), AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols are supported.

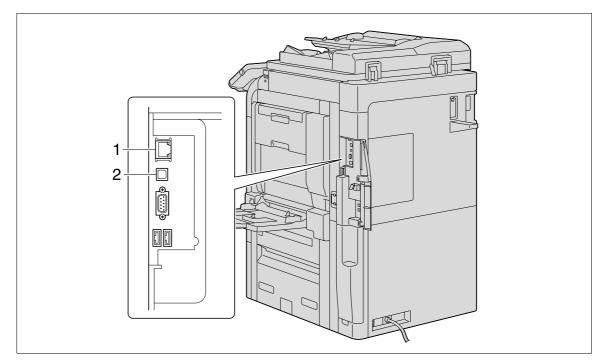
#### **USB** interface

Use this interface to use this printing system via a USB connection. The USB interface can be connected to a computer running Windows. A USB cable is required for connection. Use a type A (4 pin, male) or type B (4 pin, male) USB cable. A USB cable measuring three meters or less is recommended.

#### **Connection diagram**

The printer cables are connected to each port on this machine.

Back side of the machine



1. Ethernet port (1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T)

2. USB port

## 2.3 Setup procedure

To use this printing system, you must complete the setup in advance.

The setup refers to a series of procedures for connecting the machine to the computer and installing the printer driver to the computer.

Perform the setup using the following procedures.

#### 2.3.1 For network connection

- 1 Connect this machine to the computer.
- 2 Check that the computer to be used is connected to the network.
- 3 Specify the IP address of this machine, and then connect it to the network.
- 4 Change the network settings for this machine according to the connection method or protocol.
  - → LPR: In [LPD Setting], enable LPD printing.
  - → Port9100: In [TCP/IP Settings], enable the RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]).
  - → SMB: Configure settings of [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings].
  - → IPP/IPPS: In [IPP Settings], enable IPP printing. To use IPPS printing, install the certificate in advance.
  - → Web Service Print: In [Web Service Settings], enable the print function.
  - → Bonjour: In [Bonjour Setting], enable Bonjour.
  - → AppleTalk: In [AppleTalk Settings], enable AppleTalk.
- 5 Install the printer driver.
  - → Specify the network port for the printer driver according to the connection method or protocol.
- 6 Install the screen fonts.
  - → The DVD-ROM contains the European TrueType fonts as "screen fonts". The "Screen Font" or "Screen Fonts" folder in the DVD-ROM contains the screen fonts.
  - → Install the screen fonts using the standard function for the OS of adding fonts. For details, refer to Help of the Operating System.
  - → Macintosh fonts are compressed. Decompress them before installing.

#### Reference

 After installing the printer driver, perform test print to make sure that the connections are made properly.

#### Reference

For details on the connectable interfaces, refer to page 2-8.

For details on the network settings, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on the connection method, operating system of the computer, and printer driver. For details, refer to page 3-3.

To update an existing printer driver, uninstall it first. For details, refer to page 7-3.

Configure the interface timeout settings in the Utility menu on the control panel if necessary. For details, refer to page 12-50.

#### 2.3.2 For local connection

- **1** Connect this machine to the computer.
- 2 Install the printer driver.
- 3 Install the screen fonts.
  - → The DVD-ROM contains the European TrueType fonts as "screen fonts". The "ScreenFont" or "Screen Fonts" folder in the DVD-ROM contains the screen fonts.
  - → Install the screen fonts using the standard function for the OS of adding fonts. For details, refer to Help of the Operating System.



# **3** Precautions for Installation

The following describes the information necessary for selecting a printer driver.

# 3.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the information you should keep in mind before installing the printer driver.

The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on how this machine is connected to the computer, operating system installed on the computer, and type of the printer driver to be installed.

To determine the printer driver to be installed and connection method, check the operating system of the computer and connection environment.

Select the installation method according to the printer driver and connection method.

# 3.2 Printer drivers compatible with respective operating systems

Before using this printing system, you must install the printer driver.

The following lists the printer drivers included on the DVD and the supported operating systems. Select the required printer driver.

Printer driver	Page de- scription lan- guage	Supported Operating Systems
KONICA MINOL- TA PCL Driver (PCL driver)	PCL6	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows XP Professional ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Vista Business <sup>*</sup> Windows Vista Enterprise <sup>*</sup> Windows Vista Enterprise <sup>*</sup> Windows Vista Home Basic <sup>*</sup> Windows Vista Home Premium <sup>*</sup> Windows Vista Ultimate <sup>*</sup> Windows Server 2008 Standard <sup>*</sup> Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic <sup>*</sup> Windows 7 Home Premium <sup>*</sup> Windows 7 Professional <sup>*</sup> Windows 7 Enterprise <sup>*</sup> Windows 7 Ultimate <sup>*</sup>
PostScript KONI- CA MINOLTA driver (PS driver)	PostScript 3 Emulation	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise * Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise * Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise * Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium *
PostScript PPD driver (PS-PPD)	-	Mac OS 9.2 or later, Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

Printer driver	Page de- scription lan- guage	Supported Operating Systems
KONICA MINOL- TA XPS Driver (XPS driver)	XPS	Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 R1 Enterprise * Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic * Windows 7 Home Premium * Windows 7 Professional * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Ultimate * Supports 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environment.
Fax driver		Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Vista Business Windows Vista Business Windows Vista Enterprise Windows Vista Home Basic Windows Vista Home Premium Windows Vista Ultimate Windows Server 2008 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium Windows 7 Professional Windows 7 Enterprise Windows 7 Ultimate Support 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environment.

#### Reference

- Select the page description language according to the application used for printing.
- The Add Printer Wizard can be used for installing the PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver for Windows.



For details on the fax drivers, refer to the [User's Guide Fax Driver Operations].

# 3.3 Connection methods selectable in each operating system

The connection method for this machine varies depending on the operating system of the computer. The printer driver installation method also varies depending on the connection method. This machine can be connected via a network or a USB interface. In network connection, the printer driver installation method varies depending on the protocol to be used.

Network connection (Ethernet):

This machine is connected as a network printer.

This printing system supports 1000Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 10Base-T standards. In addition, TCP/IP (LPD/LPR, IPP, SMB), IPX/SPX (NetWare), AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols are supported. The applicable protocols vary depending on the operating system of the computer.

#### USB interface:

This machine is connected as a local printer. The USB interface can be connected to a computer running Windows.

For USB connection, this manual covers only the plug and play based setup procedures.

#### 3.3.1 Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection meth- od in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port.	p. 4-3
	Port9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	
	SMB	A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for shar- ing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol.	
	IPP/IPPS	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the In- ternet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communi- cation.	
	Web service print	It is a connection corresponding to Web Service function of Win- dows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2 and capable of automat- ically detecting the printer on the network.	
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection meth- od in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	A connection using a USB port.	p. 4-11

#### Reference

• To use Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, log on to the computer using a user name with Administrator privileges, and then install the printer driver.

### Reference

Before you can use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

To use IPPS connection, use the Add Printer Wizard. For details, refer to page 4-7.

#### 3.3.2 Windows XP/Server 2003

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection meth- od in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port.	Windows XP/Server 2003: p. 4-14
	Port9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	
	SMB	A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for shar- ing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol.	
	IPP/IPPS	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the In- ternet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communi- cation.	-
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection meth- od in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	A connection using a USB port.	Windows XP/Server 2003: p. 4-19

#### Reference

• To use Windows XP/Server 2003, log on to the computer using a user name with Administrator privileges, and then install the printer driver.

### Reference

Before you can use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### 3.3.3 Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection meth- od in which setup is possible	Bonjour	A network connection using Bon- jour and Rendezvous.	р. 5-3
	AppleTalk	A network connection using AppleTalk.	
	LPR	A network connection using the LPR print service.	*
	IPP	A network connection using the IPP print service.	

#### Reference

• AppleTalk connection supports Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5 only.

#### Reference

Before you can use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### 3.3.4 Mac OS 9.2

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection meth- od in which setup	AppleTalk	A network connection using AppleTalk.	p. 5-12
is possible	LPR	A network connection using the LPR print service.	<ul> <li>Specify the connec- tion method when se- lecting a printer.</li> </ul>

#### Reference

Before you can use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### 3.3.5 NetWare

NetWare version	Protocol used	Connection method
NetWare 4.x	IPX	Bindery Pserver Nprinter/Rprint- er
NetWare 5.x	IPX	NDS Pserver Nprinter/Rprinter
	TCP/IP	NDPS
NetWare 6.x	IPX	NDS Pserver
	TCP/IP	NDPS

#### Reference

For details on the NetWare functions, refer to the NetWare operation manual.

To use the machine in the NetWare environment, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].



## 4 Manual Installation Using the Add Printer Wizard

This chapter describes the procedure for installing the Windows printer driver using the standard Windows Add Printer function.

## 4.1 Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

#### 4.1.1 For network connection (LPR/Port 9100/SMB)

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can install the printer driver either by searching for the printer on the network, or by creating a new printer port.

#### Settings for the machine

Before using Port9100, LPR, or SMB printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
RAW port number	To use Port9100 printing: In [TCP/IP Settings] for the machine, enable the RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]).
LPD Setting	To use LPR printing: In [LPD Setting] for the machine, enable LPD printing.
SMB Setting	To use SMB printing: At [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings] for the machine, specify NetBI- OS Name, Print Service Name, and Workgroup.

## Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, [Direct Hosting Setting] for the machine must be enabled. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

# Installing the printer driver by searching for the printer using the Add Printer Wizard

- Installing the driver to Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
- 4 On the toolbar, click the additional functions of the printer.
  - → Click [Add a printer] on the toolbar.

The [Add Printer] Wizard appears.

5 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off the printer, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 6 Select your machine from the list, and then click [Next].
  - → To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select the printer with its IP address.
  - → To use the SMB connection, select the printer with its "\NetBIOS name\print service name". To check the NetBIOS name or print service name, select [Network Settings] [SMB Setting] [Print Settings] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the last six characters of the NetBIOS name correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. To check the MAC address, select [Configuration Page]. For details on how to output [Configuration Page], refer to page 12-28.
  - → For the SMB connection, click [Next], and then click [OK] in the [Connect to Printer] page that appears.
  - → It may take some time to finish searching the entire list of printers.
- 7 Click [Have Disk...].
- 8 Click [Browse...].
- 9 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers:
    - PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 10 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- 11 Click [Next].
  - → To use the SMB connection, click [OK].
- **12** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- **13** Click [Finish].
- 14 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- **15** Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

#### Installing the printer driver by creating a printer port

- Installing the driver to Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
- 4 On the toolbar, select the additional printer information.
  - → Click [Add a printer] on the toolbar.

The [Add Printer] Wizard appears.

5 Click [Add a local printer].

The [Choose a printer port] dialog box appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], and then select the port type.
  - → To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
  - → To use the SMB connection, select [Local Port].
- 7 Click [Next].
- 8 Specify the IP address and port.
  - → To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select [TCP/IP Device], and then enter the IP address.
  - → To use the SMB connection, enter "\\NetBIOS name\print service name" in the [Port Name] box.
  - → Enter the same NetBIOS name and print service name specified in [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings].
- 9 Click [Next].
  - → If the [Additional Port Information Required] or [Information for Additional Port Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
  - → If the [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears, go to Step 13.
- 10 Select [Custom], and then click [Settings...].
- **11** Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
  - → For LPR connection, select [LPR], and then enter "Print" in the [Queue Name:] box.
  - → You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
  - → For Port9100, select [Raw], and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in the [Port Number:] box.
  - → If both LPR and Port9100 are enabled on this machine, the printer driver is connected to this machine using LPR.
- 12 Click [Next].

The [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears.

- 13 Click [Have Disk...].
- 14 Click [Browse...].

- 15 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 16 Click [OK].

4

The [Printer] list appears.

- 17 Click [Next].
- 18 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- **19** Click [Finish].
- 20 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 21 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive. This completes the printer driver installation.

### 4.1.2 For network connection (IPP/IPPS)

#### Settings for the machine

To use IPP printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
IPP Setting	In [IPP Settings] for the machine, enable IPP printing.

#### Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Before you can use IPPS printing, you must register a certificate with this machine. You can use the selfsigned certificate that is preinstalled in this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].

The [Printers] window appears.

- → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
- 4 On the toolbar, select the additional printer information.
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer] on the toolbar.
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer] on the toolbar.

The [Add Printer] Wizard appears.

5 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].

Connected printers are detected.

- 6 In the window showing the search result, click [The printer that I want isn't listed].
- 7 In the [Select a shared printer by name] box, enter the URL for the machine in the following format, and then click [Next].
  - → http://<IP address for the machine>/ipp Example: When the IP address for the machine is 192.168.1.20, http://192.168.1.20/ipp
  - → When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "https://<host name>.<domain name>/ipp". <Host name>. For <domain name>, specify the host name and domain name registered for the DNS server being used.
  - → If the certificate for the machine is not the one issued by the certifying authority, you must register the certificate for the machine on the Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2 system as the certificate by "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" for the computer account.
  - → When registering a certificate to the machine, confirm that <host name>.<domain name> is displayed as the common name of the certificate.
- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].

- 10 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 11 Click [OK].

The [Printer] list appears.

- 12 Click [OK].
- **13** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- **14** Click [Finish].
- **15** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 16 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

### 4.1.3 For network connection (Web service print)

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, printers supporting the Web service print function on the network can be located and installed.

Reference

- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, the installation disk cannot be specified after the connection has been established. Install the printer driver in advance according to the installation procedure described in "Making the printer driver known from the Network window".
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008, the installation disk can be specified after the connection has been established. Although the printer driver is not installed in advance, you can specify the printer driver installation disk and install the printer driver according to the installation procedure described in "Installing the printer driver by specifying the IP address using the Add Printer Wizard".

### Reference

To install a different printer driver in the computer where one has already been installed, you must uninstall the whole package of the currently installed printer driver. For details, refer to page 7-3.

### Settings for the machine

To use the Web service print, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
Web Service Settings	In [Web Service Settings] for the machine, enable the print function.

### Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### Making the printer driver known from the Network window

To use Web service print in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, install the printer driver before making it known to the computer with plug and play.

- Installing the driver to Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Install the printer driver for this machine.
  - → Install the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard. The printer driver can be installed in any port. For details, refer to page 4-3.
- 2 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network. Since the printer is searched for, be sure to connect the machine to the network.
- **3** To use the Web service print, check that [Network discovery] is enabled in [Network and Sharing Center] on the computer.
- 4 Open the [Network] window.
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Start], and [Network].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, open [Computer] and click [Network]. If [Network] is not displayed in [Computer], click the [Network and Internet] category on the [Control Panel], and also click [View network computers and devices].

Connected computers and devices are detected.

- 5 Select the device name of the machine, and then click [Install] on the toolbar.
  - → To check the device name, select [Network Settings] [Web Service Settings] [Printer Settings] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the last six characters of [Printer name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. To check the MAC address, select [Configuration Page]. For details on how to output [Configuration Page], refer to page 12-28.

The printer driver for this machine is detected and the machine is ready to print.

6 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.

#### Reference

- If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 4-13.
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can continue the task and specify the printer driver installation disk to install the printer driver if it is not installed in advance. When the [Found New Hardware] window appears, follow the displayed messages to perform the procedure. For details, refer to Steps 11 through 20 in the succeeding section.
- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, you cannot specify the installation disk after the machine is connected to the computer. Install the printer driver in advance (Step 1).

# Installing the printer driver by specifying the IP address using the Add Printer Wizard

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can add a Web service device using the addition function of the printer after connecting this machine.

- Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network. Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect the machine to the network.
- 2 To use the Web service print, check that [Network discovery] is enabled in [Network and Sharing Center] on the computer.
- 3 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 4 Click [Start], and then select [Control Panel].
- 5 Click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
- The [Printers] window appears. → When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 6 Click [Add a printer] on the toolbar. The [Add Printer Wizard] appears.
- Click [Add a local printer].The page for [Choose a printer port] appears.
- 8 Click [Create a new port:], and then select the port type.
  - → Select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
- 9 Click [Next].
- 10 Select [Web Services Device], enter the IP address, and click [Next].

A printer of the entered IP address that is compatible with the Web service print function is located, and then the [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

- 11 Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].
- 12 If a dialog box to confirm whether to search online appears, click [Don't search online].
- 13 Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].
- 14 Click [Browse...].
- 15 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 16 Click [Next].
- **17** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue].
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

2

- 18 Click [Close].
- **19** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] window.
- 20 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

## 4.1.4 For local connection

Reference

- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, the installation disk cannot be specified after the connection has been established. Install the printer driver in advance according to the installation procedure described in "Making the installed printer driver known to the computer".
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008, the installation disk can be specified after the connection has been established. Although the printer driver is not installed in advance, you can specify the printer driver installation disk and install the printer driver according to the installation procedure described in "Installing the printer driver when connecting the machine".

#### Making the installed printer driver known to the computer

To connect this machine using the USB port in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, install the printer driver before making it known to the computer with plug and play.

- 1 Install the printer driver for this machine.
  - → Install the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard. To use the Add Printer Wizard, select the USB port to be connected in the [Choose a printer port] page. For details, refer to page 4-5.
- 2 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable.
- 3 Turn on the main power of this machine.

The printer driver for this machine is detected and the machine is ready to print.

- → If no printer driver is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 4 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.

Reference

• If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 4-13.

#### Installing the printer driver when connecting the machine

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, the printer driver can be installed after you connect this machine.

1 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable, and then start the computer.

#### NOTICE

When starting up the computer, do not plug in or unplug the cable.

2 Turn on the main power of this machine.

The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

- → If the [Found New Hardware] dialog box does not appear, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- **3** Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].

The dialog box requesting the disk (DVD-ROM) appears.

- → If you do not have the disk (DVD-ROM), click [I don't have the disc, show me other options]. On the next page, select [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)], and then specify a desired printer driver folder.
- → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- 4 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.

The information on the disk is searched for, and then the list of the software supported by this machine appears.

- 5 Select a desired printer driver name, and then click [Next].
  - → Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 6 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue].
- 7 When the installation completes, click [Close].
- 8 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] window.
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 9 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

#### Updating the driver after connecting this machine

In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, if this machine is connected without first installing the printer driver, the printer driver will not be correctly identified. If the printer driver is not correctly identified, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver].

- **1** Open the [Devices and Printers] window.
  - → Open the [Control Panel], select [Hardware and Sound], and then click [View devices and printers]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
- 2 Right-click the device name of the machine that is under [Unspecified] and then click [Properties].
  - → If [Unknown Device] appears instead of the device name of the machine, right-click to remove the device, and install the printer driver. To connect this machine as described in "Making the printer driver known to the compute". For details, refer to page 4-9 or page 4-11.
- 3 In the [Hardware] tab, click [Properties].
- 4 In the [General] tab, click [Change Settings].
- 5 In the [Driver] tab, click [Update Driver...].
- 6 In the page in which to select how to search the driver software, click [Browse my computer for driver software anyway].
- 7 Click [Browse...].
- 8 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [OK].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, XPS driver and fax driver
- 9 Click [Next].
- **10** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 11 Click [Close].
- 12 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Device and Printer] window.
- **13** Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive. This completes the printer driver updating.

#### Reference

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, [Update Driver...] is also available. In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you
can specify [Update Driver...] by opening [Properties] for this machine that is listed in [Other Devices]
under [Device Manager].

To select [Device Manager], right-click [Computer] and then click [Properties]. Select it in the [Tasks] pane that appears.

bizhub 652/552

## 4.2 Windows XP/Server 2003

#### 4.2.1 For network connection (LPR/Port9100)

To use LPR/Port9100 printing, specify the port while installing the printer driver.

#### Settings for the machine

To use Port9100 or LPR printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
RAW port number	To use Port9100 printing: In [TCP/IP Settings] for the machine, enable the RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]).
LPD Setting	To use LPR printing: In [LPD Setting] for the machine, enable LPD printing.

## Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

- ✔ Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].
  - → If [Printers and Faxes]is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].
- 3 In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu. In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].

→ Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box. The [Select a Printer Port] page appears.

- 6 Select [Create a new port:], and then select [Standard TCP/IP Port] as the [Type of port:].
- 7 Click [Next >].

[Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] starts.

- 8 Click [Next >].
- 9 In the [Printer Name or IP Address:] box, enter the IP address for the machine, and then click [Next >].
  - $\rightarrow$  If the [Additional Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
  - $\rightarrow\,$  If the [Finish] screen appears, go to Step 13.
- **10** Select [Custom], and then click [Settings:].

- 11 Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
  - → For LPR connection, select [LPR], and then enter "Print" in the [Queue Name:] box.
  - → You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
  - → For Port9100, select [Raw], and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in the [Port Number:] box.
- 12 Click [Next >].
- **13** Click [Finish].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 14 Click [Have Disk...].
- 15 Click [Browse...].
- 16 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver and fax driver
- 17 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- **18** Click [Next >].
- 19 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.
- 20 Click [Finish].
  - → If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- 21 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 22 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

## 4.2.2 For network connection (SMB)

To use SMB printing, specify the port by specifying the printer while installing the printer driver. The printer can be specified either by searching for the printer on the network, or by entering the printer name directly.

#### Settings for the machine

To use SMB printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
SMB Setting	To use SMB printing: At [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings] for the machine, specify NetBI- OS Name, Print Service Name, and Workgroup.

## Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, [Direct Hosting Setting] for the machine must be enabled. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

# Installing the printer driver by specifying the printer using the Add Printer Wizard

- ✔ Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].
  - → If [Printers and Faxes]is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].
- 3 In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu. In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].

→ Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box. The page for [Select a Printer Port] appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], select [Local Port] as the [Type of port:], and then click [Next >].
- 7 Enter "\\NetBIOS name\print service name" in the [Port Name] box.

→ Enter the same NetBIOS name and print service name specified in [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings].

8 Click [OK].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 9 Click [Have Disk...].
- 10 Click [Browse...].
- 11 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver and fax driver
- 12 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- **13** Click [Next >].
- 14 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - → To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.
- 15 Click [Finish].
  - → If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- 16 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 17 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

#### 4.2.3 For network connection (IPP/IPPS)

To use IPP printing, specify the port while installing the printer driver.

#### Settings for the machine

To use IPP printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of the machine, specify the IP address.
IPP Setting	In [IPP Settings] for the machine, enable IPP printing.

## Reference

For details on the network settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Before you can use IPPS printing, you must register a certificate with this machine. You can use the selfsigned certificate that is preinstalled in this machine. For details, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

- Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].
  - → If [Printers and Faxes]is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].
- 3 In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu. In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 In the [Local or Network Printer] page, select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer], and then click [Next >].
- 6 In the [Specify a Printer] page, select [Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:].

- 7 In the [URL:] field, enter the URL for the machine in the following format, and then click [Next >].
  - → http://<IP address for the machine>/ipp Example: When the IP address for the machine is 192.168.1.20, http://192.168.1.20/ipp
  - → When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "https://<IP address for the machine>/ipp".
  - → If a confirmation dialog box appears after clicking [Next >], click [OK].
- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].

4

- 10 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver and fax driver
- **11** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- 12 Click [OK].
- **13** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- **14** Click [Finish].
  - → If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- **15** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 16 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

#### 4.2.4 For local connection

When this machine is connected via a USB port, the printer driver can be installed with plug and play.

Reference

- When a USB connection is used, the printer driver is installed easily with the plug and play feature. However, it can also be installed using the Add Printer Wizard. To use the Add Printer Wizard, select the USB port to be connected in the [Choose a printer port] page.
- 1 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable, and then start the computer.

#### NOTICE

When starting up the computer, do not plug in or unplug the cable.

- 2 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 3 Turn on the main power of this machine.

The [Found New Hardware Wizard] window appears.

- → If the [Found New Hardware Wizard] window does not appear, turn the machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- → If a page with a message saying "Windows connect to Windows Update" appears, select [No, not this time].
- 4 Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
- 5 Under [Search for the best driver in these locations.], select [Include this location in the search:], and then click [Browse].
- 6 Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [OK].
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver and fax driver
- 7 Click [Next >], and then follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- 8 Click [Finish].
  - → If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- 9 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 10 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.



## 5 Installation on Macintosh Computers

This chapter describes the settings necessary when using Macintosh and the procedure for installing printer drivers for Macintosh.

## 5.1 Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

#### 5.1.1 Installing the printer driver

- 1 Start the Macintosh computer.
- 2 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Macintosh into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
  - → Exit all running applications, if any.
- 3 Open the folder in the DVD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- 4 Copy the driver file onto the desktop according to the Mac OS version.
  - → OS X 10.2: bizhub\_652\_602\_102.pkg
  - → OS X 10.3: bizhub\_652\_602\_103104.pkg
  - → OS X 10.4: bizhub\_652\_602\_103104.pkg
  - → OS X 10.5: bizhub\_652\_602\_105.pkg
  - → OS X 10.6: bizhub\_652\_602\_106.pkg
  - → For OS X 10.5/10.6, the driver folder varies depending on the paper size. Select the appropriate driver folder for your environment. To use metric-based paper size (A4 and the like): "WW\_A4" folder To use inch-based paper size (8 1/2 × 11 in letter size): "WW\_Letter" folder
- 5 Double-click the file copied onto the desktop.

The installer starts.

- → To cancel installation, press [Cancel].
- 6 Click [Continue] following the instructions on the pages that follow until the [Installation] page appears.
  - → When the name and password prompt appears during the procedure, enter the administrator name and password.
- 7 In the [Installation] page, click [Install].

The printer driver is installed in the computer. When the installation is completed, a message appears.

- → For OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4, when the printer driver is installed for the second and subsequent times, [Install] may change to [Upgrade].
- 8 Click [Close].

This completes the printer driver installation.

Next, select a printer.

## 5.1.2 Selecting and connecting a printer (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6)

In OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, the printer can be connected with Bonjour, LPR (LPD), or IPP.

In OS X 10.4/10.5, the printer can also be connected using AppleTalk.

After configuring the network setting for the machine, selecting this machine as the printer to be used in the [Print & Fax] window enables printing.

#### **Configuring the Bonjour settings**

Configuring the [Bonjour Setting] for the machine

Enable Bonjour in [Bonjour Setting] for the machine, and then enter the Bonjour name.

#### Reference

For details on the [Bonjour Setting] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

#### Adding a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 4 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 5 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired Bonjour-connected model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

- → To check the printer name, select [Network Settings] [Bonjour Setting] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses () suffixed in [Bonjour Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(Bonjour)".
- → After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.
- 6 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select printer software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.
  - → When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
  - → When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
- 7 Click [Add].
  - When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.
  - → If the [Installable Options] window appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. For details, refer to page 9-5.

#### Reference

For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

Configuring the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine

Enable AppleTalk in [AppleTalk Settings], and then enter the printer name.

Reference

• AppleTalk connection supports Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5 only.

## Reference

For details on the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the [AppleTalk Settings] for the computer

Configure the AppleTalk settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - → For OS X 10.5, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - → For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Double-click the [AppleTalk] tab to enable AppleTalk.
- 5 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 4 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 5 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired AppleTalk-connected model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

- → To check the printer name, select [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Settings] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses () following [Printer Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(AppleTalk)".
- $\rightarrow$  After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.
- 6 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
  - → When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.

Ķ

7 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.

→ If the [Installable Options] window appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. For details, refer to page 9-5.

Reference

5

• For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

#### **Configuring the LPR settings**

[TCP/IP Settings] for the machine

Specify the IP address for the machine.

[LPD Setting] for the printer

Before using LPR printing, enable LPD printing in [LPD Setting] for the machine.

#### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. For details on the [LPD Setting] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the TCP/IP settings for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - → For OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - → For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the connection method, IP address, and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 4 Click [IP] or [IP Printer].
- 5 In [Protocol:], select [Line Printer Daemon LPD].
- 6 In [Address:], enter the IP address for the machine.

The printer driver corresponding to this machine being identified with its IP address is automatically selected.

- → After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 8.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.

- 7 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.
  - → When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
  - → When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
- 8 Click [Add].
  - When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.
  - → If the [Installable Options] window appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. For details, refer to page 9-5.

Reference

• For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

#### **Configuring the IPP settings**

[TCP/IP Settings] for the machine

Specify the IP address for the machine.

[IPP Settings] for the machine

In [IPP Settings] for the machine, enable IPP printing.

#### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. For details on the [IPP Settings] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the TCP/IP settings for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - → For OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - → For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the connection method, IP address, and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 3 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window. [Printer Browser] appears.
- 4 Click [IP] or [IP Printer].
- 5 In [Protocol:], select [Internet Printing Protocol IPP].

6 In [Address:], enter the IP address for the machine. In [Queue:], enter "ipp".

The printer driver corresponding to this machine being identified with its IP address is automatically selected.

- → After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 8.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.
- 7 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select printer software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.
  - → When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
  - → When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.
- 8 Click [Add].
  - When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.
  - → If the [Installable Options] window appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. For details, refer to page 9-5.

Reference

• For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

#### 5.1.3 Selecting and connecting a printer (OS X 10.2/10.3)

In OS X 10.2/10.3, the printer can be connected with Rendezvous, AppleTalk, LPR (LPD), or IPP.

After configuring the network setting for the machine, selecting this machine as the printer to be used in [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] enables printing.

#### **Configuring the Rendezvous settings**

Configuring the [Bonjour Setting] for the machine

Enable Bonjour in [Bonjour Setting] for the machine, and then enter the Bonjour name.



For details on the [Bonjour Setting] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Adding a printer

- 1 Select [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities] where the driver has been installed, and then doubleclick [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 2 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the [Printer List] appears, click [Add].
  - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- **3** Select [Rendezvous] for the connection method.

Connected printers are detected.

→ If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly. 4 From the [Name] list, select the desired model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

- → To check the printer name, select [Network Settings] [Bonjour Setting] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses () suffixed in [Bonjour Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(Bonjour)".
- → After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 5.
- 5 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → From [Printer Model], select [KONICA MINOLTA], and then select the desired model from the list of model names.
- 6 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Printer List], the setting procedure is completed.

#### Configuring the AppleTalk settings

Configuring the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine

Enable AppleTalk in [AppleTalk Settings], and then enter the printer name.

### Reference

For details on the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the AppleTalk settings for the computer

Configure the AppleTalk settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show:], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [AppleTalk] tab, and then select the [Make AppleTalk Active] check box.
- 5 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes or Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- Select [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities] where the driver has been installed, and then doubleclick [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 2 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].
  - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- 3 Select [AppleTalk] for the connection method, and then select the zone to which the machine is connected.

Connected printers are detected.

→ If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly. 4 From the [Name] list, select the desired model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

- → To check the printer name, select [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Settings] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses () following [Printer Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(AppleTalk)".
- → After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.
- → If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 5.
- 5 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - → From [Printer Model], select [KONICA MINOLTA], and then select the desired model from the list of model names.
- 6 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Printer List], the setting procedure is completed.

#### Configuring the LPR settings

[TCP/IP Settings] for the machine

Specify the IP address for the machine.

[LPD Setting] for the printer

Before using LPR printing, enable LPD printing in [LPD Setting] for the machine.

#### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. For details on the [LPD Setting] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

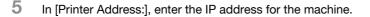
Configuring the TCP/IP settings for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Select the [Configure:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes or Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- Select [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities] where the driver has been installed, and then doubleclick [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 2 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].
  - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- **3** Select [IP Printing] for the connection method.
- 4 For OS X 10.3, select [LPD/LPR] for [Printer Type:].



6 From [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], select the desired model from the list of model names, and then click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Printer List], the setting procedure is completed.

#### Configuring the IPP settings

[TCP/IP Settings] for the machine Specify the IP address for the machine. [IPP Settings] for the machine In [IPP Settings] for the machine, enable IPP printing.

#### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. For details on the [IPP Settings] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the TCP/IP settings for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Select the [Configure:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [This service has unsaved changes or Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply].

#### Adding a printer

- 1 Select [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities] where the driver has been installed, and then doubleclick [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 2 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].
  - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- 3 Select [IP Printing] for the connection method.
- 4 For OS X 10.3, select [Internet Printing Protocol IPP] for [Printer Type:].
- 5 In [Printer Address:], enter the IP address for the machine.
  - → Leave [Queue Name:] blank.
- 6 From [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], select the desired model from the list of model names, and then click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Printer List], the setting procedure is completed.

## 5.2 Mac OS 9.2

#### 5.2.1 Installing the printer driver

After being connected, this machine can be used as a printer by selecting a PostScript printer and specifying the "printer description (PPD) file".

First, copy the "printer description (PPD) file" to the computer.

- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD-ROM for Macintosh into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Open the folder in the DVD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- Select the PPD file "KONICAMINOLTA652UVxxx.ppd", and then copy it into [Printer Description folder] that can be accessed by selecting [Macintosh HD] [System Folder] [Extensions].
   This completes the printer driver installation.

#### 5.2.2 Selecting and connecting a printer

In OS 9, the printer can be connected using AppleTalk or LPR (LPD). Configure the network settings for the machine, and then select the printer.

### Configuring the AppleTalk settings

Configuring the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine Enable AppleTalk in [AppleTalk Settings], and then enter the printer name.

#### Reference

For details on the [AppleTalk Settings] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the AppleTalk settings for the computer

Configure the AppleTalk settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [Control Panels] [AppleTalk].
- 2 From [Connect via:], select [Ethernet].
- **3** Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [Save changes to the current configuration?] message appears, click [Save].

#### Selecting a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu] menu, select [Chooser].
- 2 Make sure that [AppleTalk] is set to [Active], and then click the "LaserWriter" icon.
- 3 From the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the desired model name, and then click [Create].

The window for selecting a PostScript printer description (PPD) file appears.

- → To check the printer name, select [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Setting] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses () following [Printer Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. To check the MAC address, select [Configuration Page]. For details on how to output [Configuration Page], refer to page 12-28.
- → If a different PPD file has already been selected, click [Setup...] in Step 3, and then click [Select PPD...] from the window that is already displayed.

When the selected printer is registered in the [Chooser], the setting procedure is completed.

- → If the window showing the installable options appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. Go to Step 5.
- → If the [Chooser] window appears, go to Step 7.
- 5 In the [Options Installed 1] and [Options Installed 2] windows, specify the options installed in this machine.
- 6 Click [OK].

The [Chooser] window appears again.

7 Close the [Chooser] window.

### **Configuring the LPR settings**

[TCP/IP Settings] for the machine

Specify the IP address for the machine.

[LPD Setting] for the printer

Before using LPR printing, enable LPD printing in [LPD Setting] for the machine.

#### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. For details on the [LPD Setting] for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

Configuring the TCP/IP settings for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [Control Panels] [TCP/IP].
- 2 From [Connect via:], select [Ethernet].
- 3 Select the [Configure:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 4 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - → When the [Save changes to the current configuration?] message appears, click [Save].

#### Adding a printer

1 Select [Macintosh HD] - [Applications (Mac OS 9)] - [Utilities], and then double-click [Desktop Printer Utility] to open it.

The [New Desktop Printer] window appears.

- 2 In [Printing:], select [LaserWriter].
- In [Create Desktop...], select [Printer (LPR)].
   The [Untitled] window appears.
- 4 In [PostScriptTM Printer Description (PPD) File], click [Change...]. The window for selecting a PostScript printer description (PPD) file appears.
- 5 Click the applicable PPD file, and then click [Select]. The [Untitled] window appears again.

- 6 Click [Change...] for [LPR Printer Selection]. The window for entering the IP address appears.
- 7 In [Printer Address:], enter the IP address of the machine, and then click [OK]. The [Untitled] window appears again.
- 8 Click [Create...].The window for saving the settings appears.
- 9 Enter the [Save desktop printer as], and then click [Save].An icon for the LPR printer is created on the desktop.



## 6 Installation when Using NetWare

This chapter describes the settings necessary when using NetWare and the procedure for installing printer drivers for the Windows client.

## 6.1 NetWare

#### 6.1.1 Network Settings

In the [NetWare Settings] screen for the machine, specify [IPX Setting] and [NetWare Print Mode].

#### Reference

For details on the NetWare settings for the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

### 6.1.2 Configuring the Windows client

For the Windows client that uses a printer, install the printer driver using the [Add Printer Wizard].

- ✓ Administrator authority is required for installation.
- 1 Insert the printer driver DVD for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 3 Perform [Add a printer] or [Add Printer].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 In the port settings, browse the network and specify the name of the created queue (or NDPS printer name).
- 5 From the printer model list, specify the desired folder in the DVD-ROM that contains the printer driver.
  - → Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: Windows XP/Server 2003: PCL driver and PS driver Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 6 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow to complete the installation.

# Uninstalling the Printer Driver

# 7 Uninstalling the Printer Driver

This chapter describes the procedure for uninstalling the printer driver.

# 7.1 Windows

When you have to remove the printer driver, for example, when reinstallation of the printer driver is necessary, remove the driver using the following procedure.

- 1 Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 2 Select the icon for the printer to be uninstalled.
- 3 Remove the printer driver.
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008, press the **Delete** key on the computer keyboard.
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Remove device] on the toolbar.
- 4 From then on, follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

When the removal process completes, the icon disappears from [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.

In Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, go on to uninstall the printer driver from the server properties.

- 5 Open [Server Properties].
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, right-click on the area that has nothing displayed in the [Printers] window, click [Run as administrator] [Server Properties].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, select other printer, and click [Print Server Properties] on the toolbar.
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [File] menu, then [Server Properties].
  - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 6 Click the [Driver] tab.
- 7 From the [Installed printer drivers:] list, select the printer driver to be removed, and then click [Remove...].
  - → In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, go to Step 8.
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, go to Step 9.
- 8 Select [Remove driver and driver package.] or [Remove driver and driver package.] in the dialog box for confirming deletion target, and then click [OK].
- 9 In the dialog box for confirming if you are sure to remove the printer, click [Yes].
  - → In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, the dialog box appears to reconfirm if you are sure. Click [Uninstall].
- 10 Close the open windows, and then restart the computer.
  - $\rightarrow$  Be sure to restart the computer.

This completes removing the printer driver.

- In Windows XP/Server 2003, even if the printer driver is deleted using the preceding method, the model information file will remain in the computer. For this reason, when reinstalling the same version of the printer driver, the driver may not be rewritten. In this case, remove the following files as well.
- Check the "C:WINDOWSsystem32spooldriversw32×86" folder
   ("C:WINDOWSsystem32spooldrivers×64" folder in the ×64 system), and if there is a folder of the corresponding model, remove it. However, if multiple drivers are installed including the PCL KONICA MINOLTA driver, PostScript KONICA MINOLTA driver and fax driver, the model information of all drivers is deleted. To leave drivers other than the fax driver, do not remove the folder.
- From the "C:\WINDOWS\inf" folder, remove "oem\*.inf" and "oem\*.PNF" ("\*" included in the file name indicates a number, which differs depending on the computer environment).
   Before removing these files, open the inf file, and then check the model name described on the last few lines to confirm it is the file for the corresponding model. The number of the PNF file is the same as that of the inf file.
- When you have deleted a file using [Remove driver and driver package.] in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, this operation is not required.

# 7.2 Macintosh

When you have to remove the printer driver, for example, when reinstallation of the printer driver is necessary, remove the driver using the following procedure.

## 7.2.1 For Mac OS X

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
  - → The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in [Apple Menu] (OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6).
  - → The [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] [Applications]
     [Utilities] (OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4).
- 2 Select the printer name to be deleted, and then click [-] (or [Delete]).

The selected printer is deleted.

- 3 Close the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
- 4 Drag the following installed files, which are located in [Macintosh HD] [Library] [Printers] [PPDs] [Contents] [Resources] ([Resources] for OS 10.5/10.6 and [Resources] -[en.lproj] for OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4) to the [Trash] icon.
  - → [KONICAMINOLTA652.gz]
  - → [KONICAMINOLTA602.gz]
  - → [KONICAMINOLTA552.gz]
  - → [KONICAMINOLTA502.gz]
- 5 Delete unnecessary files from [Library] [Printers].
  - → Drag the [652] folder, which is located in [Library] [Printers] [KONICAMINOLTA], to the [Trash] icon.
  - → In addition, for Mac OS X 10.2, drag all the [KONICA MINOLTA 652] folders, which are located in [Library] [Printers] [PPDPlugins], to the [Trash] icon.
- 6 For OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5, drag [bizhub 652\_602\_xxx.pkg], which is located in [Library] [Receipts], to the [Trash] icon.
- 7 Restart the computer.

This completes removing the printer driver.

### 7.2.2 For Mac OS 9.2

- 1 Drag the printer icon on the desktop to the [Trash] icon.
- Drag the PPD file "KONICAMINOLTA652UVxxx.ppd", which is located in [Macintosh HD] [System Folder] [Extensions] [Printer Descriptions folder], to the [Trash] icon.
   The related printer driver files are deleted.
- 3 Restart the computer.

This completes removing the printer driver.



# 8 Print function of PCL/PS/XPS drivers for Windows

This chapter describes functions of the PCL/PS/XPS printer drivers for Windows.

# 8.1 Print operations

Print jobs are specified from the application software.

- 1 Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.
  - → If the menu is not available, click [Print].
- 2 Check that the printer name has been selected in [Printer Name] (or [Select Printer]).
  - → If the printer is not selected, click to select the printer.
  - → The [Print] dialog box differs depending on the application.
  - → The printer name varies depending on the installation method. The printer name can be changed if necessary. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name PS".

eneral	
Select Printer	
🖶 Printer Name FAX	
Printer Name PCL	
Printer Name PS	
Printer Name XPS	
Status: Ready Location: Comment:	Print to file Preferences Find Printer
Page Range	
Al	Number of copies: 1 🔶
Selection Current Page	
Pages:	Collate

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
- 4 Click [Properties] (or [Preferences]) to change the printer driver settings as necessary.
  - → Clicking [Properties] or [Preferences] in the [Print] window displays the [Printing Preferences] page of the printer driver where you can configure various functions. For details, refer to page 8-11.
  - → [Printing Preferences] of the printer driver changed in the [Print] window are not saved, and the original settings are restored when you exit the application.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed and the data indicator of the machine flashes.

→ When [Secure Print Only] is set to [On] on [Device Option] of the [Configure] tab, [Secure Print] window appears. Go to Step 6. 6 Enter the ID and password of the document, and then click [OK].

Data is sent and saved in the [Secure Document User Box] of this machine.

Ų	Secure Print Secure Print ID Max. 16
	Password Max. 8
	Click the [OK] button after entering in [Secure Print] - [ID] and [Password].
	Operate the followings on the printer's control panel in order to use the documents which is printed by "secure print".
	[User Box]button -> [System] -> [Secure
—	
	OK Cancel Default Help

# Reference

8

For details on the [Configure] tab, refer to page 8-5. For details on secure printing, refer to page 11-6.

# 8.2 Default settings of the printer driver

When you have installed the printer driver, you need to change the initialization conditions such as options, user authentication and account track functions and enable functions of the machine from the [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver.

#### NOTICE

If the model name, installed options, user authentication and account track functions for the machine are not specified on the [Configure] tab, the option functions cannot be used from the [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver. Be sure to configure the settings for the installed options.

### 8.2.1 Displaying the Properties window

- Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, click [Start], then [Printers and Faxes].
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, if [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Other Hardware], then [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2 Open [Printer Properties].
  - → In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Properties].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printer Properties].

# 8.2.2 [Configure] tab

🖶 Pi	Rrinter Name PCL Properties				3	
Ger	General Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Configure Settings					
				8 HDD	Device Option	
	Paper Tray I					
	Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Type		
	Tray1	8 1/2x11	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper		
	Tray2	8 1/2x11	LEF	Plain Paper		
	Tray3	8 1/2x11	D LEF	Plain Paper		
	Tray4	8 1/2x11		Plain Paper	er 👻	
	Paper T	ray Settings				
			Encrypt	ion Passphrase	Software Tools	
	Obtain <u>D</u> er	vice Information			Web Connection -	
	Obtain	n <u>S</u> ettings			I) Stațt	
					OK Cancel Apply Help	5

Specify the model name used and presence or absence of the installed options, user authentication and account track functions, and then allow the printer driver to use the functions of the machine.

Item Name	Functions	
[Device Option]	Configure the model name of the machine and the status of the installed printer options and user authentication/account track. Specify the status of each item in the [Setting] box.	
[Paper Tray Information]	Displays the paper type assigned for each paper tray. Click [Paper Tray Settings] to configure the settings for each paper tray.	

Item Name	Functions	
[Obtain Device Informa- tion]	Click this button to communicate with this machine and load the status of the installed options.	
[Obtain Settings]	Click this button to configure conditions such as the destination when you perform [Acquire Device Information]. When automatically acquiring device information, enable [Auto]. If necessary, you can select [Entert Password to acquire Device Information] and specify a password for authentication to acquire device information. This then performs password authentication when acquiring device information.	
[Encryption Passphrase] Any string used to encrypt communication with this machine. If the encryption passphrase for the machine was changed from [Us Default] to [User-Defined], enter the same encryption passphrase machine. An encryption key is automatically created for the entered used for communication with the machine.		
[Software Tools]	Allows you to start up the software tools such as <b>PageScope Web Connec-</b> tion.	

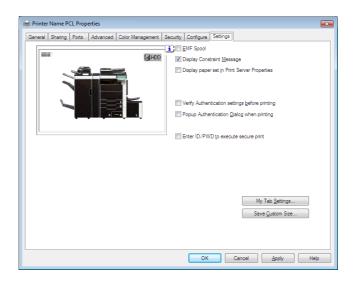
- The machine type and option in [Device Option] are specified automatically if [Obtain Settings...] is set to [Auto]. If [Auto] is not enabled, be sure to specify the machine and option manually or using [Obtain Device Information].
- When [Secure Print Only] is set to [On] in [Device Option], only the secure print jobs are allowed. For details on secure printing, refer to page 11-6.
- In [Encrypt. Passphrase], enter the encryption passphrase that matches the one that configured in [Driver Password Encryption Setting] of the machine.
- The function of [Acquire Device Information] is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with the machine. To use [Acquire Device Information], in [Administrator Settings] of this machine, set [System Connection] [OpenAPI Settings] [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.
- If [Password to Acquire Device Information] is selected in [Obtain Settings...], check that the password matches that specified in [Assign Account to Acquire Device Info] of this machine. Specify the password using up to eight alphanumeric characters, excluding spaces and """.

#### Reference

For details on allowing the user to specify [Encrypt. Passphrase], refer to page 11-33.

For details on [Assign Account to Acquire Device Info] of this machine, refer to page 12-53.

### 8.2.3 [Settings] tab



The Settings tab allows you to change the default settings for displaying the confirmation messages or the window for entering the authentication settings.

Item Name	Functions	
[EMF Spool]	Select this check box when meta file (EMF) spool is required for use in its own system environment.	
[Display Constraint Mes- sage]	Select this check box to display the message when functions that cannot be configured simultaneously are enabled for the printer driver.	
[Display paper set in Print Server Properties]	Select this check box to use forms added in the [Server Properties] dialog box of the Printers window.	
[Verify Authentication settings before printing]	Select this check box to verify authentication settings for this machine before printing, and display the message if they are not satisfied.	
[Popup Authentication Dialog when printing]	Select this check box to display the [User Authentication/Account Track] di- alog box when specifying printing, prompting entering the user name and ac- count name.	
[Enter ID/PWD to exe- cute secure print]	Select this check box to display the [Secure Print] dialog box prompting entry of ID and password when performing secure print.	
[My Tab Settings]	Configure the settings to display My Tab for the printer driver. [Display My Tab]: Displays or hides My Tab. Select this check box to display My Tab. If this check box is not selected, [Share My Tab], [Prohibit Editing], and [Display Note] will be disabled and My Tab will not be displayed. [Share My Tab]: Specifies whether to share the function layout on My Tab. If this check box is selected, the My Tab layout specified in the server side is inherited to that in the client side when specifying a shared printer of the serv- er from a client and installing the printer driver. Also, this function hides the [Edit My Tab] key in the client side to prohibit a client user from editing My Tab. [Prohibit Editing]: Prohibits or allows each user to edit My Tab. If this check box is selected, the [Edit My Tab] key is hidden to prohibit each user from ed- iting My Tab. [Display Note]: Displays or hides a note on My Tab. If this check box is se-	
[Save Custom Size]	lected, a note on My Tab is displayed. Click this button to register custom paper sizes.	

- [EMF Spool] and [Save Custom Size...] are functions available only for the PCL driver.
- To use the EMF spool function with a PS/XPS driver, select [Enable advanced printing features] in the [Advanced] tab to enable the EMF spool.
- To display [Server Properties], in Windows Vista/Server 2008, right-click on the area that has nothing displayed in the [Printers] window, and click [Run as administrator] - [Server Properties]. In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, select the desired printer, and click [Print Server Properties] on the toolbar. In Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [File] menu, then [Server Properties].
- The paper set in Print Server Properties for the printer driver is allowable in the following ranges. Custom sizes available in printer driver: Width: 3-1/2 to 12-1/4 inches (9.00 to 31.11 cm), Length: 5-1/2 to 18 inches (13.97 to 45.72 cm)
  - Banner sizes available in printer driver: Width: 8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (21.00 to 29.70 cm), Length: 18 to 47-1/4 inches (45.73 to 120.0 cm)

Allowable range of large size 1: (2200 to 29.70 cm), Length. 18 to 47-174 inches (45.73 to 120.0 cm)

Width: 3-9/16 to 8-1/4 inches (9.00 to 20.90 cm), Length: 18 to 46-13/16 inches (45.73 to 118.90 cm) Allowable range of large size 2:

Width: 11-11/16 to 12-1/4 inches (29.71 to 31.12 cm), Length: 18 to 46-13/16 inches (45.73 to 118.90 cm)

Allowable range of large size 3:

Width: 12-1/4 to 33-1/8 inches (31.12 to 84.10 cm), Length: 5-1/2 to 46-13/16 inches (13.97 to 118.90 cm)

The paper size registered in the range of the above custom sizes or banner sizes are available in both of [Original Size] and [Paper Size] of the printer driver. However, the paper size registered in the allowable range of each large size is available only in [Original Size] of the printer driver.

• To enable each user to use functions on My Tab at the same layout, the settings can be configured using **Driver Packaging Utility** included in the application DVD-ROM.

When creating a driver package using **Driver Packaging Utility**, change the printer driver used as the package source to the desired My Tab position to copy the printer setting in the **Driver Packaging Utility** settings. For details on the **Driver Packaging Utility** settings, refer to the **Driver Packaging Utility** Help.

# Reference

For details on the My Tab function, refer to page 8-11.

#### 8.2.4 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

To register the settings, change the printer driver basic settings (default settings).

- 1 Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, click [Start], then [Printers and Faxes].
  - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, if [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Other Hardware], then [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2 Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box of the printer appears.

3 Change the settings of the function, and then click [OK] to exit the function.

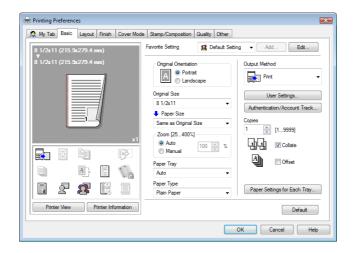
The changed settings are applied when the printer is used by all of the application software.

For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 8-11.

The printer driver has the function to save the setting as a [Favorite Setting]. For details, refer to page 8-9.

# 8.3 Common Setting

This section describes the settings and buttons common to tabs.



Item Name	Functions	
[OK]	Click this button to enable changed settings and close the properties win- dow.	
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the proper- ties window.	
[Help]	Click this button to display Help of the items in the displayed window.	
[Add] (Favorite Setting)	<ul> <li>Click this button to save current settings so that they can be recalled later. For the items displayed with the [Restore Items] function, you can select whether to call the settings specified when the Favorite Setting was created when you select the [Favorite Setting]. The following are the items for which you can make a setting in [Restore Items].</li> <li>Original size, original orientation</li> <li>Copies</li> <li>List information of paper type settings</li> <li>List information of page setting</li> <li>Watermark list information and share setting If you do not check these items, their settings are not called even if you select [Favorite Setting].</li> </ul>	
[Edit] (Favorite Setting)	Click this button to change saved settings. In [Option], you can change whether to select the [Restore Items] check box.	
[Default]	Click this button to return to the default settings.	

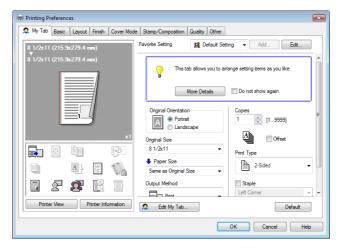
Item Name	Functions
View	Selecting [Paper View] displays the sample page layout based on current set tings for checking the output result image. Selecting [Printer View] displays a printer figure showing the options installec in the machine such as the paper tray. Paper:
	8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm) 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)
	Printer:
	600° BHDD
[Printer Information]	Click this button to start <b>PageScope Web Connection</b> and check the printer information. This button is enabled only when your computer can communi cate with this machine.

# 8.4 Parameter details

The Printing Preferences window is the window to configure the printer driver functions. To open this window, in the Print dialog box, click [Properties] (or [Preferences]), or right-click the printer icon in the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window. Then select [Printing Preferences...].

#### 8.4.1 My Tab

My Tab allows you to customize the display contents. By registering frequently used setting functions to My Tab, the printer driver can be easier to use, and you can modify various settings from a single window.



Function Name	Option	Description
[More Details]	-	Click this button to display the Help of My Tab.
[Do not show again]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to hide the comment field con- taining [More Details] from the next time.
[Edit My Tab]	-	Click this button to register or delete the functions dis- played on My Tab. For details, refer to page 8-12.

#### Reference

- The comment field containing [More Details] or [Do not show again] is not displayed if [Display Note] is disabled in [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab.
- [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed when [Prohibit Editing] is enabled in [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab.
- Items other than the above are customized on [Edit My Tab...], and the specific display contents vary depending on the registered contents.

#### Reference

For details on the [Settings] tab, refer to page 8-7.

#### Edit [My Tab]

Reference

8

- [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed when [Prohibit Editing] is enabled in [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab.
- 1 On [My Tab], click [Edit My Tab...].
- 2 Select the function you want to register on [My Tab], and then click [to the LEFT] or [to the RIGHT].
  - → Select the desired function from those indicated in the respective tabs in [Setting Item List].
  - → Clicking [to the LEFT] places the selected function on the left side of [My Tab] and likewise clicking [to the RIGHT] places it on the right side of [My Tab].
  - → At the left of the functions currently registered to [My Tab], the icons indicating the [LEFT side]/[RIGHT side] appear.

tting Item List		
	over Mode Stamp/Composition	Quality Other
Staple Center Staple and Fold		
Punch		
Fold Output Tray		
Paper Arrangement		
to the LEFT	▼ to the RIGHT	
🧟 My Tab		
LEFT side Original Orientation	Copies	
Original Size	Offset	🔺 Up
Paper Size Output Method	Print Type Staple	Down
Odiput Mistriod	Stapio	↓ Left/Right
		Remove

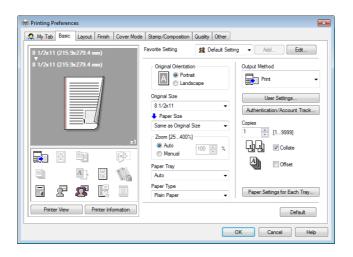
- 3 The following describes how to change the layout of the registered functions.
  - → Select the function whose position you want to move and click [Up], [Down], [Left/Right] as needed.
  - → To delete a function from [My Tab], select the function you want to delete, and then click [Remove].

Edit My Tab	×
Setting Item List	
Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
Case of the second seco	
to the LEFT  My Tab	
LEFT side     IORIGHT side	
Original Orientation Copies Up Original Size Offset	
Paper Size Print Type Output Method Staple	
Punch Left/Right	
Remove	
OK Cancel Default Help	

4 Click [OK].

#### 8.4.2 [Basic] tab

The Basic tab allows you to configure the basic printing functions such as paper size and type as well as output method.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Original Orienta- tion]	Portrait, Landscape	Select the orientation for the original.
[Original Size]	The paper sizes regis- tered as the standard pa- per sizes and custom sizes	Select the paper size of the original.
	Custom Size	Register custom sizes.
[Paper Size]	The paper sizes regis- tered as the standard pa- per sizes and custom sizes that can be used with the machine	Specify the output paper size. If it is different from the original size and the zoom is set to [Auto], the output image will be enlarged or reduced to fit the size.
	Custom Size	Register custom sizes.
[Zoom]	25 to 400%	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.
[Paper Tray]	Auto, Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, Bypass Tray	Select a paper tray to be used. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Paper Type]	Paper types available for the machine	Select a paper type to be used for printing. It can be changed only when Paper Tray is set to [Auto]. When Paper Tray is not set to [Auto], the paper types registered in [Paper Settings for Each Tray] are availa- ble.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Method]	[Print]	Select this option to print immediately.
	[Secure Print]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in [Secure Document User Box] of the machine. When printing, entering the [ID] and [Password] is required from the control panel of the machine. Select this op- tion when printing highly confidential documents.
	[Save in User Box]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in a User Box of the machine.
	[Save in User Box and Print]	Select this option to save the document in a User Box and print at the same time.
	[Proof Print]	After one copy of the document is printed, the machine stops printing temporarily. Select this option to avoid misprinting a large volume of print jobs.
	[ID&Print]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in [ID & Print User Box] of the machine. When printing, user authentication must be performed via the control panel of the machine.
[User Settings]	-	Specify the ID and password, or the file name and User Box number when performing [Secure Print] or [Save in User Box].
[Authentica- tion/Account Track]	-	Click this button to specify the user name and pass- word when [User Authentication] is enabled on this ma- chine, or the account name and password when [Account Track] is enabled on this machine.
[Copies]	1 to 9999	Specify the number of copies to be printed.
[Collate]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to collate pages sequentially when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Offset]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to stagger each set when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Paper Settings for Each Tray]	[Paper Type Settings]	Select a paper tray to be specified. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
	[Paper Type]	Select the type of paper to be loaded onto the paper tray.

- Paper size [12 × 18] is equivalent to 304.8 × 457.2 mm that is slightly larger than A3.
- In [Original Size], you can select A0, A1, A2, B1, B2, or B3; however, the printing paper size is reduced to the size specified in [Paper Size]. [Same as Original Size] cannot be selected in [Paper Size]. The large size registered for the paper set in Print Server Properties is also reduced to the size specified in [Paper Size]. The paper set in Print Server Properties is available when [Display paper set in Print Server Properties] is selected in the [Settings] tab.
- To use paper of which the size is other than the standard sizes, specify the custom paper size. You can register a custom size by selecting [Custom Size] from the paper size or original size option.
- To print data of the size corresponding to the full standard size, selecting "W" of the standard size paper for original size enables the data to be printed at the center of paper larger than the original size. For example, if you want to center and print 8-1/2 × 11 size data on 11 × 17 sized paper, create data with the "8-1/2 × 11W" size, and then, using the printer driver, set [Original Size] to [8-1/2 × 11W] and specify the paper tray to be used as [Paper Tray].

On the machine side, set  $11 \times 17$  size paper on the tray to be used, and from [Basic screen (Paper)] of the control panel, select the tray and specify "8-1/2 × 11W" for [Change Tray Settings] - [Wide Paper]. Then, confirm that [Auto Detect] is selected for [Custom Size] and 11 × 17 is displayed.

When 12 1/4  $\times$  18 paper is loaded, you must select [12 1/4  $\times$  18] for [Custom Size].

To print on custom sized paper, use the bypass tray, select [Change Tray Settings] - [Wide Paper] to specify "8-1/2  $\times$  11W", and enter the desired paper size to be used for [Change Size].

- Specify [Side2] when printing on the back side of paper.
- [User] of Paper Type is the frequently used paper type registered on the machine side. For details on registering the user paper, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- If you specify a user whose name includes " (double quotation mark) from the printer driver and try to
  print a job or save it into a User box when [user authentication] is enabled on this machine, login error
  occurs on the machine and the print job is deleted.

For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

For details on the output method, refer to page 11-3.

1

# 8.4.3 [Layout] tab

🙎 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other			
8 1/2x11	(215.9	bc279.4 n	im)		Favorite Setting	😫 D	efault Sett	ting 👻	Add	Edit
8 1/2x11	(215.9	<b>x279.4</b> n	nm)		Combination			Print Typ	e	
			7		2 in 1		-	B	2-Sided	-
					Combination	Details				
		_	1					Binding i	Position	
		1	4						Auto	•
				x1	Rotate 180			📰 Bindi	ng Margin	
		Pa		RE I	🔲 Skip Blank Page	5		Bin	ding Margin Sel	tings
	لنغنا			974	Cha <u>p</u> ters			📃 Imag	e Shift	
		A		10	Entry Example 2	4,6-10		k	nage Shift Setti	ngs
	£	25								
, Printe	er View	P	rinter Info	ormation						lefault
							_	ок	Cancel	Help

Function Name	Option	Description
[Combination]	2 in 1, 4 in 1, 6 in 1, 9 in 1, 16 in 1, 2 × 2, 3 × 3, 4 × 4	Select any of the options to print multiple pages of the original on to one sheet or print information on one page of the original on to several sheets. In [Combination Details], specify the page order and use of the border frame.
[Combination De-	[Combination]	Select the combination condition.
tails]	[Layout Order]	Specify the layout order. It can be specified when N in 1 is specified for Combination.
	[Border]	Specify the presence and type of border lines. It can be specified when N in 1 is specified for Combination.
	[Overlap width line]	Specify the presence of overlap width line. It can be specified when N $\times$ N is specified for Combination.
[Rotate 180]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to rotate the document 180 to print.
[Skip Blank Pag- es]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to not print any blank pages.
[Chapters]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify the page to be printed on the front side. It can be specified when Print Type is [2-Sided] or [Booklet].
[Entry]	-	Specify the pages to be printed on the front side when [Chapters] is selected.
[Print Type]	[1-Sided], [2-Sided], [Booklet]	Specify 1-Sided/2-Sided Print or Booklet printing. To save paper, 2-Sided Print is the default setting.
[Binding Position]	[Auto], [Left Bind], [Right Bind], [Top Bind]	Specify the binding position.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Binding Margin]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify the binding margin. Click [Binding Margin Settings] to specify the margin values.
[Binding Margin Settings]	[Shift Mode]	Select how to process the image to prepare the page margin.
	[Front Side]/[Back Side]	Specify the binding margin values. For 2-sided printing, clearing the [Same value for front and back sides] check box allows you to specify different values for the front and back sides.
	[Unit]	Select a unit to be used for specifying the size.
[Image Shift]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print by shifting the entire print image. Click [Image Shift Settings] to specify the im- age shift values.
[Image Shift Set-	[Unit]	Select a unit to be used for specifying the size.
tings]	[Front Side]/[Back Side]	Specify the shift direction and values. For 2-sided print- ing, clearing the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box allows you to specify different values for the front and back sides.

- The options "2 × 2, 3 × 3 and 4 × 4" for [Combination], which are for printing a sheet of original onto multiple sheets of paper, are available only for the PCL driver.
- The [Skip Blank Pages] function is available for the PCL/XPS drivers.
- The positions of binding margins vary according to the [Binding Position] setting.

# 8.4.4 [Finish] tab

🖶 Printing Preferences		×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Value Add	Edit
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Staple Output Tray	
	Left Comer	-
	Center Staple and Fold	
	Punch	
	2-Hole (Left) Paper Arrangen	
	Prioritize Arran	ging Papers 👻
	Half-Fold 👻	
Printer View Printer Information		Default
	ОК Саг	
	UK Car	Help

Function Name	Option	Description
[Staple]	ON/OFF, Left Cor- ner/Right Corner/2 Posi- tion (Left)/2 Position (Right)/2 Position (Top)	Select this check box to specify stapling. From the drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position.
[Center Staple and Fold]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify center staple and fold.
[Punch]	ON/OFF, 2-Hole (Left)/2- Hole (Right)/2-Hole (Top)/3-Hole (Left)/3- Hole (Right)/3-Hole (Top)/4-Hole (Left)/4- Hole (Right)/4-Hole (Top)	Select this check box to specify hole punching. From the drop-down list, specify the number of punch- es and the punching position.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Fold]	ON/OFF, Half-Fold/ Tri- Fold/Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K) /Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)	Select this check box to specify folding. From the drop-down list, specify the folding condition.
[Output Tray]	Default, Tray 1 and Tray 3	Specify the tray to output the printed pages. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Paper Arrange- ment]	[Prioritize Arranging Pa- pers]/[Prioritize Produc- tivity]	Specify the method for paper arrangement (adjusting the binding position) for 2-sided printing. When [Priori- tize Arranging Papers] is selected, the paper arrange- ment process is performed after receiving all data. When [Prioritize Productivity] is selected, the paper ar- rangement process is performed while receiving and printing data.

- The [Staple] function is available only when the optional **Finisher** is installed.
- The [Punch] function is available only when the **Punch Kit** or **Z Folding Unit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- The [Center Staple and Fold] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- [Half-Fold] in the [Fold] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit** is installed on the optional **Fin-isher**.
- [Tri-Fold] in the [Fold] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit SD-508** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-526**.
- [Z-Fold] in the [Fold] function is available only when the **Z Folding Unit ZU-606** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-526**.
- To use the Z-Fold function, specify the paper size value (Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K), Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)), which you selected in the drop-down list, in [Paper Size] of the application or printer driver.
- If [Half-Fold] or [Tri-Fold] is specified for the [Fold] function and multiple pages are printed, the unit of finishing varies depending on the setting of [User Settings] [Copier Settings] [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]) in the control panel. If [One Sheet at a Time] is specified for [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]), printed sheets are folded page by page. If [Multiple Sheets] is specified, all sheets are folded together even if a job contains multiple pages. However, if the number of original pages exceeds the folding capacity of this machine, the [Fold] function setting is cancelled automatically, and the sheets are printed without being folded.]] When [Booklet] is selected simultaneously with [Half-Fold], all pages are half-folded together even if [One Sheet at a Time] is selected. For details, refer to page 12-35.

# 8.4.5 [Cover Mode] tab

🖶 Printing Preferences	Printing Preferences			
🕵 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	de Stamp/Composition	Quality Other		
8_1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	Untitled	✓ Add Edit	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover		Per Page Setting	
	Front Cover T	rav	Edţ List	
	Tray1	*	1 Transparency Interleave	
	Blank	-	Blank -	
	Bac <u>k</u> Cover T Tray1	ray 👻	Interleave Tray Tray1	
	Front Cover fro	m Post Inserter		
	Back Cover fro	m Po <u>s</u> t Inserter		
Printer View Printer Information			Defauțt	
			OK Cancel Help	

Function Name	Option	Description
[Front Cover]	ON/OFF, [Blank]/[Print]	Select this check box to attach a front cover page. It can be specified when any other option than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
[Front Cover Tray]	Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, By- pass Tray	Select the paper tray for the front cover sheet. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Back Cover]	ON/OFF, [Blank]/[Print]	Select this check box to attach a back cover page. It can be specified when any other option than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
[Back Cover Tray]	Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, By- pass Tray	Select the paper tray for the back cover sheet. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Front Cover from Post Inserter]	ON/OFF, PI Tray 1 PI Tray 2	Print a document with a front cover. It can be specified when any option other than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
[Back Cover from Post Inserter]	ON/OFF, PI Tray 1/ PI Tray 2	Print a document with a back cover. It can be specified when any option other than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
[Per Page Setting]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to insert paper between pages and switch the paper and tray for each page. [Edit List] allows you to create a list specifying conditions on a page basis.
[Edit List]	[List Name]	Select the name of the list to be edited. The settings are listed.
	[Edit List Name]	Rename a list.
	[Up]/[Down]	Click the button to move the selected condition row up or down. Move the rows so that the page numbers are arranged in ascending order.
	[Add]	Click this button to add a condition. Specify conditions in [Add/Edit].
	[Delete]	Click this button to delete the selected condition row.
	[Page Number]	Specify the page numbers using a numerical value. To specify multiple pages, separate each page number with a comma or specify the range using a hyphen.
	[Print Type]	Specify the print type from the [Change Settings] drop- down list.

Function Name	Option	Description
	[Paper Tray]	Specify the paper tray to be used from the [Change Settings] drop-down list.
	[Staple]	From the [Change Settings] drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position.
[Transparency In- terleave]	ON/OFF, [Blank]	Select this check box to insert interleaves when printing transparencies. It can be specified when [Transparency] is selected for Paper Type.
[Interleave Tray]	Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT	Select the paper tray for the transparency interleaves. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.

- The [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter] function is available only if the optional **Post Inserter PI-505** is installed.
- [Front Cover from Post Inserter] and [Front Cover] or [Back Cover from Post Inserter] and [Back Cover] cannot be specified at the same time.

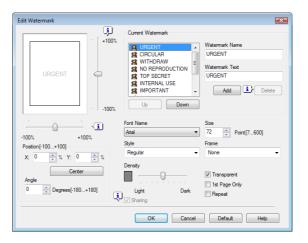
# 8.4.6 [Stamp/Composition] tab

🖶 Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	le Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting V Add	Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark     Copy Security	
	Copy Protect     WITHDRAW	-
	K NO REPRODUCTION	
	Edt Date/Time	
	Overlay Edit	
	None -	
	Header/Footer	
	<machine setting1=""></machine>	<b>•</b>
	Edit	
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to be enabled in the printer, settings of those functions set in the D	efault
	OK Cancel	Help

Function Name	Option	Description
[Watermark]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print the document with a wa- termark (character stamp) overlapped. Clicking [Edit] allows you to create, change, or delete watermarks.
[Edit]	-	For details, refer to page 8-21.
[Overlay]	[None]	The overlay function is not used.
	[Create Host Image]	Printing the original with this setting creates the overlay data. Created data is saved in the computer.
	[Print Host Image]	Select this option to print the original on top of the over- lay data created with [Create Host Image]. Selecting this setting displays the overlay data stored in the computer in the list below, allowing you to select it. Clicking [Edit] allows you to specify the overlay print- ing conditions.
	[Print Device Image]	Select this option to print the original on top of an over- lay data of the machine. Clicking [Edit] allows you to specify the overlay data and conditions registered in this machine.
[Edit]	-	For details, refer to page 8-22.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Copy Security]	ON/OFF, [Copy Pro- tect]/[Repeatable Stamp]/[Copy Guard]/[Password Copy]	Specify the special pattern or password to prevent copying. Click [Edit] to specify items to be printed, positions, composition method and password. If you select [Password Copy], the [Edit] screen ap- pears where you can specify a password.
[Edit]	-	For details, refer to page 8-23.
[Date/Time]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print the date and time. Click [Edit] to specify items and pages to be printed and positions.
[Page Number]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print page number. Click [Ed- it] to specify items and pages to be printed and posi- tions.
[Edit]	-	For details, refer to page 8-25.
[Header/Footer]	Machine Setting 1 to Ma- chine Setting 20	Select this check box to print the header and footer. Select the header/footer from the list specified in the main unit. Clicking [Edit] allows you to specify items and pages to be printed.
[Edit]	[Acquire Device Informa- tion]	Select this option to communicate with the machine to read the header settings configured on the machine.
	[Distribution Control Number]	When printing multiple copies, this function prints the number of copies in the header/footer.
	[Edit]	Specify the distribution control number conditions.
	[Pages]	Specify the pages to be printed.

- [Print Device Image] of the [Overlay] function is available only for the PCL driver.
- The function of [Acquire Device Information] is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with the machine.
   To use [Acquire Device Information], in [Administrator Settings] of the machine, set [System Connection] [OpenAPI Settings] [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.
- [Copy Guard] and [Password Copy] are available when [Password Copy] and [Copy Guard] are set to [Yes] in [Administrator Settings] [Security Settings] [Security Details] under this machine while the optional **Security Kit SC-507** is installed. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].



Function Name	Description
[Watermark Name]	Enter the name of the watermark. You can enter up to 30 characters.
[Watermark Text]	Enter the text to be printed as the watermark. You can enter up to 30 characters.
[Add]	Click this button to create a new watermark.
[Delete]	Click this button to delete the selected watermark.
[↑]/[↓]	Click the button to change the order of items displays in the list. This allows you to move the frequently used items upward.
[Position]	Select the vertical and lateral positions. You can specify the positions us- ing the scroll bars provided on the right of and under the image.
[Center]	Click this button to return the watermark back to the center position.
[Angle]	Specify the watermark print angle.
[Font Name]	Select the font.
[Size]	Select the size.
[Style]	Select the style.
[Frame]	Select the frame style.
[Density]	Specify the density of the text.
[Transparent]	Select this check box to print the watermark in a transparent image.
[1st Page Only]	Select this check box to print the watermark only on the first page.
[Repeat]	Select this check box to print the watermark on one page repeatedly.
[Sharing]	Select this check box to register the watermark for sharing it with other users or clear this check box to register it for private use.

#### **Editing overlay**

8

The window to be displayed by clicking [Edit...] varies depending on the overlay selection ([Print Host Image] or [Print Device Image]).

When [Print Host Image] is selected:

You can specify the overlay printing conditions. When the overlay data does not appear in the list, read it by specifying the file.

Form1 KFO		
Form1 XFO	Brow	se Files
		Jelete
Change 2nd Page ar	sd Later	
Carl Land	1	
He Information		
	Al Pages	-
Overlay Name:		
File Name:	Form1.KFO	1
Folder:	C:\Users\User01\Documents	
Original Size:	B 1/2x11	
Original Orientation:	Portrat	
Color:	Color	
•	10	
verlay Print Setting		
ages	Overwrite	
Al Pages	- Back	

Function Name	Description
[Browse Files]	Click this button to load the overlay file.
[Delete]	Click this button to delete the selected overlay.
[Change 2nd Page and Lat- er]	Select this check box to change the overlay files of the 2nd and subsequent pages.
[File Information]	Displays the information of the selected overlay.
[Pages]	Specify the pages to be printed.
[Overwrite]	Specify the sequence for printing the overlay on top of the original.

When [Print Device Image] is selected:

You can specify the overlay printing conditions by specifying the overlay registered in the machine.

t Print In Overlay		?
Overlay Info		Obtain Device Information
	Front Side	Back Side
Overlay Name Original Size Original Orientation Color Resolution Date	"over1 8 1/2x11 Portrait Black 600dpi 2009/9/12	"over1 8 1/2x11 Portrat Black 600dpi 2009/9/12
Print on Front Side		Print on Back Side
Overlay Name		erlay Name
*over1	▼ *01	ver1 👻
Browse		Browse
Density 100 (a) % [201 Overwrite Overlay Brightness	• Ov	
Pages		
All Pages	•	
	OK Cance	el Default Help

Function Name	Description
[Obtain Device Information]	Select this option to communicate with the machine to read the overlay

Function Name	Description
[Overlay Info]	Displays the information of the selected overlay.
[Print on Front Side]/[Print on Back Side]	Select the check box to specify whether printing is done or not for each of the front side/back side.
[Overlay Name]	Select the overlay name registered in the machine.
[Browse]	Click this button to display the detailed information of the selected over- lay.
[Density]	Select the overlay printing density.
[Overwrite]	Specify the sequence for printing the overlay on top of the original.
[Same as Front Side]	Clear this check box to specify the same value for both the front and back sides.
[Pages]	Specify the pages to be printed.

- [Print Device Image] of the [Overlay] function is available only for the PCL driver.
- The function of [Acquire Device Information] is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with the machine. To use [Acquire Device Information], in [Administrator Settings] of this machine, set [System Connection] [OpenAPI Settings] [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.

### Editing the copy security

dit Copy Security Copy Security Copy Protect	Password Max. 8
Print Item Detail Settings	Serial Number
Invald copy Date/Time Format: '07/1/23 Edt	Databution Control Number     Start Number:     1     Edt     Job Number
	Obtain Device Information Default

Function Name	Description
[Copy Security]	<ul> <li>Select a function to prevent unauthorized copying.</li> <li>[Copy Protect]: Composes the specified text in the background before printing data. Copy Protect text is not highly visible when printing, but the text is highlighted when a document is copied illegally.</li> <li>[Repeatable Stamp]: Composes the specified text before printing data. This stamp is distinguishable even during printing.</li> <li>[Copy Guard]: Composes Copy Guard patterns before printing data. If a document is copied illegally on the machine that supports this function, the composed pattern is scanned, and the copying process is cancelled.</li> <li>[Password Copy]: Composes Password Copy patterns before printing data.</li> <li>If a document is copied illegally on the machine that supports this function, the composed pattern is scanned, and you are prompted to enter the password. To copy a document, enter the specified password when printing.</li> </ul>
[Password]	Enter the password for [Password Copy].
[Characters]	Select this check box to embed the selected character string in a pattern. A preregistered character string (common stamp) or a character string registered in the machine (registered stamp) can be specified.

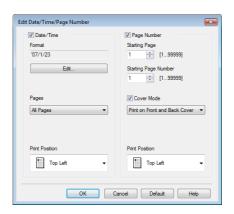
Function Name	Description
[Date/Time]	Select this check box to embed the selected date and time in a pattern. Click [Edit] under [Format] to specify the display type and presence or absence of the time display.
[Serial Number]	Select this check box to embed the serial number of the machine in a pat- tern.
[Distribution Control Number]	Select this check box to embed the copy number in a pattern when print- ing multiple copies. Click [Edit] under [Start Number] to specify the start number and number of digit to be displayed.
[Job Number]	Select this check box to embed the print job number in a pattern for doc- uments that are automatically paginated.
[Obtain Device Information]	Select this option to communicate with the machine to read the copy se- curity settings configured on the machine.

Edit Copy Security	? 💌
Copy Security	Password Max. 8
Angle 0 degrees  Text Size	Patem Overwrite Front (Overwrite) - Background Pattern
Standard   Adjust Density	<pre>«Machine Setting1» • Pattern A Emboss Text •</pre>
	Default OK Cancel Help

Function Name	Description
[Angle]	Specify the pattern angle.
[Text Size]	Specify the text size of a pattern.
[Adjust Density]	Specify the density or contrast of a pattern.
[Pattern Overwrite]	Specify the sequence for printing a pattern on top of the original.
[Background Pattern]	Specify the background pattern.
[Pattern]	Specify the embedding method of a pattern.

- The function of [Acquire Device Information] is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with the machine. To use [Acquire Device Information], in [Administrator Settings] of the machine, set [System Connec-
- tion] [OpenAPI Settings] [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.
- Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected [Copy Security] function.

### Editing date/time and page number



Function Name	Description
[Format]	Displays the format of the date and time to be printed. Click [Edit] to specify the display type and presence or absence of the time display.
[Pages]	Specify the pages to print the date and time.
[Print Position]	Specify the print position.
[Starting Page]	Specify the page to start printing the page number.
[Starting Page Number]	Specify the start number for printing the page number.
[Cover Mode]	Specify whether the page number is printed on the front cover page and the back cover page, when attaching the cover pages.
[Print Position]	Specify the print position.

# 8.4.7 [Quality] tab

8

The functions displayed vary depending on which of the PCL/PS/XPS drivers is used. PCL driver

۵	My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other			
Γ						Favorite Setting	😫 D	efault Settir	ig 🔻	Add Edit	
					P	Print with B Text/Figure Qualit Original Type Photo DTP Web CAD	lack y Adjustn	• nent	T		•
		£	8							Font Settings	
	Printe	er View	F	rinter Info	omation					Default	
									ок	Cancel	lelp

#### PS driver

Rinting Preferences	
Advanced 🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish	Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other
	Favorite Setting V Add Edit
	Quality Adjustment
	Original Type
Printer View Printer Information	Fort Settings
	OK Cancel Help

#### XPS driver

Printing Prefer		Dinish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e
x, my rab   bas	sc Layout	rinish	Cover Mode	Favorite Setting		efault Set	ting • Add Edit
				Print with B Text/Figure Qualit	ack / Adjustm	v	Pattern Coarse -
			F.	Original Type Document Photo DTP Web CAD			Toner Save
Printer Vie	w P	rinter Info	mation				Default
							OK Cancel Help

Function Name	Option	Description				
[Print with Black]	ON/OFF [Text], [Text/Figure], [All]	It protects the tinted characters, lines and figures from being printed lighter according to the selected condi- tions.				
[Quality Adjust- ment]	-	Click this button to adjust the image quality. Select [Simple] to adjust entire documents or [Detail] to adjust the text, photos, figures, tables, and graphs in each original.				
[Original Type] [Document], [Photo], [DTP], [Web], [CAD]		Select any of the options to print with a quality suitable for the selected original. [Document]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for documents with many characters. [Photo]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for photos. [DTP]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for documents produced by DTP. [Web]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for Web page printing. [CAD]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for CAD data printing.				
[Pattern]	[Fine], [Coarse]	Specify fineness of the graphic patterns.				
[Glossy Mode]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print using a gloss finish. It can be specified when Print Type is [1-Sided].				
[Toner Save] ON/OFF		Select this check box to adjust the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.				
[Edge Enhance- ON/OFF ment]		Select this check box to enhance the edges of charac- ters, graphics and images so that thin lines and small letters become clearly visible.				
[Font Settings]	-	Select whether the fonts to be downloaded from the computer to this machine are bitmap fonts or outline fonts. Also specify whether to replace the TrueType fonts by printer fonts when printing. If garbled characters are detected while printing data using the PCL driver, set download fonts to bitmap fonts, and set printer fonts to OFF.				

- The [Pattern] function is available for the PCL/XPS drivers.
- The [Font Settings] function is available for the PCL/PS drivers.

### 8.4.8 [Other] tab

Printing Preferences						
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	Favorite Setting	ng 🗸 Add Edit				
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm) ▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Excel Job Control					
	Remove White Background					
	✓ Thin Line Support					
		About				
Printer View Printer Information		Default				
		OK Cancel Help				

Function Name	Option	Description
[Excel Job Con- trol]	ON/OFF	When multiple Microsoft Excel sheets with different page settings are printed at one time, the sheets may be separated into single-sheet jobs depending on the data contained. Select this check box to minimize such job separation.
[Remove White Background]	ON/OFF	When an overlay file is printed on top of Microsoft Pow- erPoint data, white areas are removed so that the white background of the PowerPoint data does not hide the overlay file. Clear this check box to print the original data as is without removing the background.
[Thin Line Sup- port]	ON/OFF	When printing with reduced size, thin lines may become blurred. Select this check box to prevent the thin lines from becoming blurred.
[About]	-	Click this button to display the printer driver version in- formation.

#### Reference

- The [Remove White Background] function is available for the PCL/XPS drivers.
- The [Thin Line Support] function is available only for the PCL driver.
- The [Excel Job Control] and [Remove White Background] settings are not available in Windows XP Professional ×64, Windows Vista ×64, Windows 7 ×64, Windows Server 2003 ×64, Windows Server 2008 ×64, or Windows Server 2008 R2.
- You can change the [Excel Job Control] setting only when the printer driver setting dialog is displayed from the [Printers] ([Devices and Printers] in Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 and [Printers and Faxes] in Windows XP/Server 2003) window.



# 9 Print Functions of Mac OS X

This chapter describes the functions of the PS printer driver for OS X.

## 9.1 Print operations

Print jobs are specified from the application software.

- Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.
   → If the menu is not available, click [Print].
   The [Print] window appears.
- 2 Check that the desired printer name is selected in [Printer:].
  - → If the target printer is not selected, select it.

Printer:	Printer Name	•
Presets:	Standard	<b>+</b>
? PDF •	Preview	Cancel Print

- → If the printer does not appear, select the printer from [Print & Fax], [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center]. For details, refer to page 5-4 and page 5-8.
- → The [Print] window varies depending on the application software.
- → The printer name can be changed if necessary. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name".
- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
  - → When the setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click</a> <a>Image: The setting items

	Printer: Printer Name
	Copies: 1 Collated Pages: All From: 1 to: 1 Paper Size: 8 1/2x11 \$ 8.50 by 11.00 inches Orientation: 1
(************************************	Cancel

- 4 Switch the setting window as necessary to change the printer driver settings.
  - → When you change the pop-up menu of the print options, another setting window of the printer driver appears, allowing you to configure various functions. For details, refer to page 9-10.
  - → The printer driver settings changed in the [Print] window are not saved, and the original settings are restored when you exit the application.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed and the data indicator of the machine flashes.

→ When [Secure Print Only] is selected in [Installable Options], the [Secure Print] window appears. Go to Step 6.

bizhub 652/552

6 Enter the [Secure Print ID:] and [Password:] of the document, and then click [OK]. Data is sent and saved in the [Secure Document User Box] of this machine.

	NORMCA REPORTALISE PS
	Secure Print ID:
	Password:
	Save Settings
-	
	Cancel OK

9

For details on [Installable Options], refer to page 9-5.

For details on [Secure Print], refer to page 11-6.



When you have installed the printer driver, you need to change the initialization conditions such as options and enable functions of the machine from the printer driver.

#### NOTICE

Any options that are installed in the machine but not configured ion the [Printer Info] tab cannot be used by the printer driver. Be sure to configure the settings for the installed options.

#### 9.2.1 Option settings

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
  - → The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in [Apple Menu] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6).
  - → The [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] [Applications]
     [Utilities].
- 2 Display the [Printer Info] window.
  - → For the [Print & Fax] window, click [Options & Supplies...] (OS X 10.5/10.6) or [Printer Setup...] (OS X 10.4).
  - → For the [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window, select [Show Info] of the [Printers] menu.
- 3 Display the [Installable Options] window.
  - → For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, click [Driver].
  - → In OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4, select [Installable Options].
- 4 Specify the installed options.

				y are accurately show check the printer's	n
Paper Source Un	t: (	•			
Finisher:					
Punch Unit:	218 (2 main)		•		
🗹 Hard Disk					
Secure Print C	nly				

5 Click [OK] or [Apply Changes], and then close the [Printer Info] window.

#### Reference

- Be sure to select the appropriate option.
- When [Secure Print Only] is selected, only the secure print jobs are allowed. For details on secure printing, refer to page 11-6.

bizhub 652/552

### 9.2.2 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

To register the settings, save the printer driver settings. For Mac OS X, you can register the paper setting as the default setting. Settings for other print functions can be saved using the [Presets] function and used by recalling them as necessary.

Settings configured in the [Page Setup] dialog box are saved by selecting [Save As Default] in [Settings:].

	Save As Default
Format for:	Printer Name
	KERNER, MERCETTER & E.S. PS
Paper Size:	8 1/2×11
	8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
Scale:	100 %

The functions of the printer driver configured in the [Print] window are saved by selecting [Save As] in [Presets:].

These settings can be used by selecting them in [Presets:].

	Printer: Printer Name
Image: Second	Presets       ✓ Standard         Last Used Settings
PDF V	Cancel Print

#### Reference

• The [Per Page Setting] list is not saved with the preset.



For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 9-10.

## 9.3 Common Setting

The following describes the common settings that are displayed when you specify, in the [Print] window, the functions unique to the machine ([Output Method], [Layout / Finish], [Paper Tray / Output Tray], [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], [Per Page Setting], [Stamp / Composition] and [Quality]).

OS X 10.5/10.6:

	Printer:	Printer Name
	Presets:	Standard 🗘
	Copies:	1 Collated
In the second sequence is a second sequence of the second se	Pages:	
		O From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size:	8 1/2x11 \$ 8.50 by 11.00 inches
	Orientation:	
		Output Method
	Paper View     Detailed Information     S1/2x11     S1/2x11	Collate Offset Output Method: Print
	x 1	User Authentication
		Account Track
	Printer Information	Detail Settings
		Default
		Cancel Print

OS X 10.4:

9

Printer: Printer	
Presets: Standa	rd 🗘
Output	: Method
Paper View     Detailed Information     1/2x11     *     1/2x11	☑ Collate □ Offset
×1	Output Method:
	<ul> <li>User Authentication</li> <li>Account Track</li> </ul>
Printer Information	Detail Settings
`	Default
? PDF • Preview	Cancel Print

Item Name	Functions
[Paper View]	Displays the sample page layout based on current settings for checking the print result image.
[Detailed Information]	Displays the current settings in texts.
[Printer Information]	Displays the installation option status.
[Default]	Click this button to return to the default settings.
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the proper- ties window.
[Print]	Click this button to enable changed settings for printing.

#### Reference

• Clicking [Acquire Device Information] in the Printer Information window communicates with the machine and load the status of the installed options. This function is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with the machine.

## 9.4 Adding a custom size

To use paper of other than a standard size, register a custom paper size.

- 1 From the [File] menu, select [Page Setup].
- 2 Open the window for registering a custom size.
  - → For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, select [Manage Custom Sizes...] from the Paper Size list.
     → For Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, select [Custom Paper Size] from [Settings:].
- 3 Click [+] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [New] (OS X 10.2/10.3).
- 4 Enter the paper size name.

Be sure to use paper size names other than existing names, such as A4 and Custom.

- 5 Configure the following items.
  - → Page Size (Paper Size): Specify the paper size.
  - → Printer Margins: Specify the paper margins.

A4+	Page Size:	8.26 in Width	11.69 in Height
	Printer Margin		\$
+ - Duplicate	0.25 in Left	0.25 in Top 0.57 in Bottom	0.25 in Right
(?)		Cancel	ОК

6 Click [OK] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or click [Save] (OS X 10.2/10.3).

This saves the custom paper size, which can be selected from the Paper Size drop-down list in [Page Attributes].

#### Reference

• For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, you can also select [Manage Custom Sizes...] with [Paper Size:] in the [Print] window.

Ć

## 9.5 Parameter details

The printer driver functions are specified in the following windows: [Page Attributes] specified in the [Page Setup] window and [Output Method], [Layout / Finish], [Paper Tray / Output Tray], [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], [Per Page Setting], [Stamp / Composition] and [Quality] specified in the [Print] window.

#### 9.5.1 [Page Attributes]

From the [File] menu, select in [Page Setup].

Cattings	Page Attributes
settings:	Page Attributes
Format for:	Printer Name
	KONKEA MINOLITIK KER PS
Paper Size:	8 1/2×11
	8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
Scale:	100 %
0	Cancel OK

Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Size:]	The paper sizes regis- tered as the standard pa- per sizes and custom sizes that can be used with the machine	Specify the output paper size.
	Manage Custom Sizes (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6)	
[Orientation:]	Portrait, Landscape	Select the orientation for the original.
[Scale:]	- (Varies depending on the version of OS X.)	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.

#### Reference

- Paper size [12 × 18] is equivalent to 304.8 × 457.2 mm that is slightly larger than A3.
- To use paper of which the size is other than the standard sizes, specify the custom paper size. For details on registering the custom size, refer to page 9-9.
- To print data of the size corresponding to the full standard size, selecting "W" of the standard size paper for paper size enables the data to be printed at the center of paper larger than the original size. For example, if you want to center and print 8-1/2 × 11 size data on 11 × 17 sized paper, create data with the "8-1/2 × 11W" size, and then, using the printer driver, set [Paper Size] to [8-1/2 × 11W] and specify the paper tray to be used as [Paper Tray]. On the machine side, set 11 × 17 size paper on the tray to be used, and from [Basic screen (Paper)] of the control panel, select the tray and specify [8-1/2 × 11W] for [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper]. Then, confirm that [Auto Detect] is selected for [Custom Size] and 11 × 17 is displayed. When 12 1/4 × 18 paper is loaded, you must select [12 1/4 × 18] for [Custom Size]. To print on custom sized paper, use the bypass tray and select [8-1/2 × 11W] for [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper] and enter the paper size to be used for [Change Size].
  For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, you can specify [Paper Size] and [Orientation] also from the Print window.

#### Reference

For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

### 9.5.2 [Copies & Pages]

From the [File] menu, select [Print].

Printer:	Printer Name
Presets:	Standard
Copies:	1 Collated
Pages:	All     From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size:	8 1/2x11 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
	TextEdit
	Print header and footer
	Cancel Print

Function Name	Option	Description
[Copies:]	1 to 9999	Specify the number of copies to be printed.
[Collated]	ON/OFF	Do not specify this function. Specify this function at [Collate] in [Output Method].
[Pages:]	-	Specify the page range to print.

#### Reference

- For OS X 10.5, [Paper Size:] and [Orientation:] are also displayed, but the function is the same as that available from [Page Attributes].
- When the setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5, click I on the right side of [Printer:].

## 9.5.3 [Output Method]

	Output Method
Paper View     Detailed Information     8 1/2x11	Collate
8 1/2×11	Offset
	Output Method: Print
x 1	User Authentication
	Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

Function Name	Option	Description
[Collate]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to collate pages sequentially when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Offset]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to stagger each set when printing multiple sets of copies.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Method:]	[Print]	Select this option to print immediately.
	[Secure Print]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in [Secure Document User Box] of the machine. When printing, entering the ID and password is required from the control panel of the machine. Select this option when printing highly confidential documents.
	[Save in User Box]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in a User Box of the machine.
	[Save in User Box and Print]	Select this option to save the document in a User Box and print at the same time.
	[Proof Print]	After one copy of the document is printed, the machine stops printing temporarily. Select this option to avoid misprinting a large volume of print jobs.
	[ID&Print]	Select this option to save the document to be printed in [ID & Print User Box] of the machine. When printing, user authentication must be performed via the control panel of the machine.
[User Authentica- tion]	-	Select this check box to specify the user name and password if [User Authentication] has been specified for the machine. Selecting this check box displays the setting window.
[Account Track]	-	Select this check box to specify the account name and password if [Account Track] has been specified for the machine. Selecting this check box displays the setting window.
[Detail Settings]	-	Click this button to display the window for configuring the detail settings.

#### Reference

9

• If you specify a user whose name includes " (double quotation mark) from the printer driver and try to print a job or save it into a User box when [user authentication] is enabled on this machine, login error occurs on the machine and the print job is deleted.

#### Reference

For details on each print function in [Output Method:], refer to page 11-3.

## Checking the [Output Method] detail settings

Clicking [Detail Settings...] displays the [Output Method:] functions for which detail settings can be specified.

Clicking [Expand All] displays the settings.

Selecting a function and clicking [Settings...] displays the window for specifying the detail settings for the selected function.

			_
			-
			1
lapse All			
Setting	gs		
			_
	llapse All Setting	llapse All	 

Function Name	Description	
[Secure Print]	This is the same window as that appears when you specify [Secure Print] in [Output Method:].	
[Save in User Box]	This is the same window as that appears when you specify [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box and Print] in [Output Method:].	
[User Authentication]	This is the same window as that appears when you select the [User Au- thentication] check box in [Output Method:].	
[Account Track]	This is the same window as that appears when you select the [Account Track] check box in [Output Method].	
[Administrator Settings]	Select this option to display the window for changing the display settings of the User Authentication Settings window and changing the [Encryption Passphrase:].	

Admin	iistrator Settings
Jser Authentication/Account T	rack
Popup Authentication Dia	log when printing
User Authenticatio	in
Account Track	
Secure Print	
ncryption Passphrase	
Encryption Passphrase	
	ings
Enhanced Server:	ings
	ings
Enhanced Server:	ings
	ings
Enhanced Server:	ings
Enhanced Server:	ings

bizhub 652/552

Function Name	Description
[Popup Authentication Dia- log when printing]	Select this check box to display the User Authentication, Account Track or Secure Print window when specifying printing, prompting entering the user name, account name, document ID and password.
[Encryption Passphrase:]	Any string used to encrypt communication with this machine. If the encryption passphrase for the machine was changed from [Use Fac- tory Default] to [User-Defined], enter the same encryption passphrase as for the machine. An encryption key is automatically created for the entered text, and used for communication with the machine.
[Enhanced Server:]	Set this item to [On] when the external server authentication is used.

#### Reference

9

• In [Encryption Passphrase:], enter the encryption passphrase that matches the one that configured in [Driver Password Encryption Setting] of the machine.

## Reference

For details on allowing the user to specify [Encryption Passphrase:], refer to page 11-33.

## 9.5.4 [Layout / Finish]

The [Layout] window and the [Finish] window can be switched.

Paper View     O Detailed Information	t / Finish
8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Print Type: 2-Sided
	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode:
	Off 🔷
x 1	Rotate 180
	Image Shift
	Chapters
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel

	Layout / Finish
Paper View O Detailed Information	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Off \$
8 1/2×11	
	Punch:
	Off 🔹
	Fold & Staple:
	Off
	Paper Arrangement:
	×1 Prioritize Arranging Papers 🗧
ि नि स् दर्	
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	(Cancel) (Prin

Function Name	Option	Description	
[Print Type:]	[1-Sided], [2-Sided], [Booklet]	Specify 1-Sided/2-Sided Print or Booklet printing. To save paper, 2-Sided Print is the default setting.	
[Binding Posi- tion:]	[Left Bind], [Right Bind], [Top Bind]	Specify the binding position.	
[Poster Mode:]	Off, 2 × 2, 3 × 3, 4 × 4	Select this option to print one sheet of an original divid- ed into multiple pages. In [Overlap width line], specify the presence of the border frame. Printing documents containing pages of different sizes or orientations in one job may cause images to be par- tially lost or overlapped.	
[Overlap width line]	ON/OFF	Specify the presence of overlap width line. It can be specified when Poster Mode is set to an option other than [Off].	
[Rotate 180]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to rotate the document 180 to print.	
[Image Shift]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print by shifting the entire print image. In the window that appears when this option is selected, detailed amount of shift can be specified.	
	[Front Side]/[Back Side]	Specify the shift direction and values. For 2-sided print- ing, clearing the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box allows you to specify different values for the front and back sides.	
[Chapters]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify the page to be printed on the front side. In the window that appears when this option is selected, the page can be specified. It can be specified when Print Type is [2-Sided] or [Booklet].	
	[Page Number:]	Specify the pages to be printed on the front side when [Chapters] is selected.	
[Staple:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify stapling. From the drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position.	
[Punch:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to specify hole punching. From the drop-down list, specify the number of punch es.	
[Fold & Staple:]	OFF, [Center Staple and Fold], [Half-Fold], [Tri- Fold/Z-Fold] (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)/[Z-Fold] (8 1/2 × 14)	Specify the fold and staple.	
[Paper Arrange- ment:]	[Prioritize Arranging Pa- pers]/[Prioritize Produc- tivity]	Specify the method for paper arrangement (adjusting the binding position) for 2-sided printing. When [Priori- tize Arranging Papers] is selected, the paper arrange- ment process is performed after receiving all data. When [Prioritize Productivity] is selected, the paper ar- rangement process is performed while receiving and printing data.	

#### Reference

- The [Staple] function is available only when the optional **Finisher** is installed.
- The [Punch] function is available only when the **Punch Kit** or **Z Folding Unit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- The [Center Staple & Fold] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit** or **Z Folding Unit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- [Tri-Fold] in the [Center Staple & Fold] function is available only when the Saddle Kit SD-508 is installed on the optional Finisher FS-526. [Z-Fold] in the [Center Staple & Fold] function is available only when the Z Folding Unit ZU-606 is installed on the optional Finisher FS-526. To use the Z-Fold function, specify the paper size value (Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K), Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)), which you selected in the drop-down list, in [Paper Size] of the application or printer driver.

If [Half-Fold] or [Tri-Fold] is specified for the [Center Staple & Fold] function and multiple pages are printed, the unit of finishing varies depending on the setting of [User Settings] - [Copier Settings] - [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]) in the control panel. If [One Sheet at a Time] is specified for [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]), printed sheets are folded page by page. If [Multiple Sheets] is specified, all sheets are folded together even if a job contains multiple pages. However, if the number of original pages exceeds the folding capacity of this machine, the [Fold] function setting is cancelled automatically, and the sheets are printed without being folded.]] When [Booklet] is selected simultaneously with [Half-Fold], all pages are half-folded together even if [One Sheet at a Time] is selected For details, refer to page 12-35.

### 9.5.5 [Paper Tray / Output Tray]

Paper View     O Detailed Information	Paper Tray:
8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Auto     Image: Constraint of the second secon
Printer Information	Default

Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Tray:]	Auto, Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, Bypass Tray	Select a paper tray to be used. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Paper Type:]	Paper types available for the machine	Select a paper type to be used for printing. It can be changed only when Paper Tray is set to [Auto]. When Paper Tray is not set to [Auto], the paper types registered in [Paper Settings for Each Tray] are avail- able.
[Paper Settings for Each Tray]	[Paper Tray:]	Select a paper tray to be specified. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
	[Paper Type:]	Select the type of paper to be loaded onto the paper tray.
[Output Tray:]	Default, Tray 1 and Tray 3	Specify the tray to output the printed pages. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.

#### Reference

- Specify [Duplex Side 2] when printing on the back side of paper.
- [User] of Paper Type is the frequently used paper type registered on the machine side. For details on registering the user paper, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].



The [Cover Mode] setting window and the [Transparency Interleave] window can be switched.

Paper View     Detailed Information	Cover Mode Transparency I	terleave
8 1/2x11	Front Cover:	
₩ 8 1/2×11	Off	\$
	Off	\$
	Back Cover:	
	Off	÷ )
	Off	÷.
	Front Cover from Post Inserter: Off Back Cover from Post Inserter:	\$
Printer Information	Off	, A
		Default

Paper View     O Detailed Information	Cover Mode Transpare	ncy Interleave
8 1/2×11	Transparency Interleave:	
₩ 8 1/2×11	Off	* )
	Off	\$
Printer Information		
		Default

Function Name	Option	Description
[Front Cover:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to attach a front cover page. It can be specified when any other option than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
	Off, [Print], [Blank]	Select whether to print on the front cover sheet.
	Off, Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, Bypass Tray	Select the paper tray for the front cover sheet. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.
[Back Cover:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to attach a back cover page. It can be specified when any other option than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
	Off, [Print], [Blank]	Select whether to print on the back cover sheet.
	Off, Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT, Bypass Tray	Select the paper tray for the back cover sheet. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Front Cover from Post Inserter]	ON/OFF	Print a document with a front cover. It can be specified when any option other than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
	OFF, PI Tray 1/PI Tray 2	Select the paper tray for the Front Cover from Post In- serter sheet.
[Back Cover from Post Inserter]	ON/OFF	Print a document with a back cover. It can be specified when any option other than [Auto] is selected for Paper Tray.
	OFF, PI Tray 1/PI Tray 2	Select the paper tray for the Back Cover from Post In- serter sheet.
[Transparency In- terleave:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to insert interleaves when printing transparencies. It can be specified when [Transparency] is selected for Paper Type.
	Off, [Blank]	It is specified so that the transparency interleave is out- put in blank (this setting cannot be changed).
	Off, Tray 1 to Tray 4, LCT	Select the paper tray for the transparency interleaves. Selectable items vary depending on the option installa- tion status.

#### Reference

- The [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter] function is available only if the optional **Post Inserter PI-505** is installed.
- [Front Cover from Post Inserter] and [Front Cover] or [Back Cover from Post Inserter] and [Back Cover] cannot be specified at the same time.

### 9.5.7 [Per Page Setting]

The print type and paper tray can be specified for each page. This function is convenient if you want to change the paper tray while printing multiple pages. The settings can be registered in the list and used as necessary.

[	Per Page Setting
<ul> <li>Paper View</li> <li>Detailed Information</li> </ul>	_
8 1/2×11	Per Page Setting:
8 1/2×11	Add Delete
Printer Information	
	Default
	(Cancel) Print

Function Name	Option	Description
[Per Page Set- ting:]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to insert paper between pages and switch the paper and tray for each page.
[Add]	-	Click this button to display the [Per Page Setting] dialog box to create a list specifying conditions.
[Delete]	-	Click this button to delete the list.
[Edit]	-	Click this button to display the [Per Page Setting] dialog box to edit a list specifying conditions.

## **Editing Per Page Setting**

	Per Page Set	ting	
List Name: List01	Page Number Print Type Body Text 1- Print (1-Sided) 1-3 Print Insert BodyEnd Print (1-Sided)	Paper Tray Auto Tray1 Auto	Staple Off Left Corner Off
1-3	Paper Tray:	Delete	le: Left Corner
			Cancel OK

Function Name	Description
[List Name:]	Enter the name of the list.
[Add]	Add a condition to the list.
[Delete]	Delete a condition from the list.

Function Name	Description
[▲][▼]	Sort the selected condition rows according to page number.
[Page Number:]	Enter the page number of the selected condition row. Specify the page numbers using a numerical value. To specify multiple pages, separate each page number with a comma (for example, "2,4,6") or specify the range using a hyphen (for example, "6-10").
[Print Type:]	Select Print or Blank and 2-Sided or 1-Sided printing for the selected con- dition row.
[Paper Tray:]	Specify the paper tray used to print the selected condition row.
[Staple:]	Specify the number of staples and the stapling position for the selected condition row.

## 9.5.8 [Stamp / Composition]

Paper View	Stamp / Composition
O Detailed Information 8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Copy Security Settings
	Date/Time
	x 1 Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer
	Default
	Cancel Print

Function Name	Option	Description
[Copy Security]	ON/OFF	Specify the special pattern or password to prevent copying. Click [Settings] to specify items to be print- ed, positions, composition method and password.
[Settings]	-	For details, refer to page 9-21.
[Date/Time]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print the date and time. Click [Settings] to specify items and pages to be printed and positions.
[Settings]	-	For details, refer to page 9-22.
[Page Number]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print page number. Click [Settings] to specify items and pages to be printed and positions.
[Settings]	-	For details, refer to page 9-23.
[Header/Footer]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print the header and footer. Select the header/footer from the list specified in the main unit. Click [Settings] to specify items and pages to be printed.
[Settings]	-	For details, refer to page 9-23.

## Editing the copy security

	Copy Security	
Copy Security: Copy Protect	•	Password Copy Password:
Pri	int Item Detail Set	ttings
Date/T	lid copy ime: 1/23 \$ 1: lumber ution Control Number ther: Put Num Num	23PM ÷ ar: 1 zeros in front mber only
Save Settings Do not show this	window when setting	
Default		Cancel OK

Function Name	Description
[Copy Security:]	Select a function to prevent unauthorized copying. [Copy Protect]: Composes the specified text in the background before printing data. Copy Protect text is not highly visible when printing, but the text is highlighted when a document is copied illegally. [Repeatable Stamp]: Composes the specified text before printing data. This stamp is distinguishable even during printing. [Copy Guard]: Composes Copy Guard patterns before printing data. If a document is copied illegally on the machine that supports this function, the composed pattern is scanned, and the copying process is cancelled. [Password Copy]: Composes Password Copy patterns before printing da- ta. If a document is copied illegally on the machine that supports this func- tion, the composed pattern is scanned, and you are prompted to enter the password. To copy a document, enter the specified password when print- ing.
[Password:]	Enter the password for [Password Copy].
[Characters:]	Select this check box to embed the selected character string in a pattern. A preregistered character string (common stamp) or a character string registered in the machine (registered stamp) can be specified.
[Date/Time:]	Select this check box to embed the selected date and time in a pattern. Selecting from the drop-down list allows you to specify the display type and presence or absence of the time display.
[Serial Number]	Select this check box to embed the serial number of the machine in a pat- tern.
[Distribution Control Number:]	Select this check box to embed the copy number in a pattern when print- ing multiple copies. The start number or number of digits can be specified.
[Job Number]	Select this check box to embed the print job number in a pattern for doc- uments that are automatically paginated.

#### Reference

9

• [Copy Guard] and [Password Copy] are available when [Password Copy] and [Copy Guard] are set to [Yes] in [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details] under this machine while the optional **Security Kit SC-507** is installed.. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

Copy Security	
Copy Security: Copy Protect	Password Copy Password:
Text Size: Standard Angle: O degrees Pattern: Emboss Text Pattern Overwrite: Front (Overwrite) Background Pattern: Pattern 1 Adjust Density	
Save Settings     Do not show this window when setting	
Default Ca	uncel OK

Function Name	Description
[Text Size:]	Specify the text size of a pattern.
[Angle:]	Specify the pattern angle.
[Pattern:]	Specify the embedding method of a pattern.
[Pattern Overwrite:]	Specify the sequence for printing a pattern on top of the original.
[Background Pattern:]	Specify the background pattern.
[Adjust Density]	Specify the density of a pattern.

#### Reference

• Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected [Copy Security] function.

#### **Editing Date/Time**

Date/Time
Format: '07/1/23  1:23PM
Pages:
All Pages
Print Position: Top Left
<ul> <li>Save Settings</li> <li>Do not show this window when setting</li> </ul>
Default Cancel OK

Function Name	Description
[Format:]	Displays the format of the date and time to be printed.
[Pages:]	Specify the pages to print the date and time.

Function Name	Description
[Print Position:]	Specify the print position.

# Editing Page Number

Page Number
Starting Page: 1 99999] Starting Page Number: 1 99999] V Cover Mode: Print on Front and Back Cover
Print Position:
<ul> <li>Save Settings</li> <li>Do not show this window when setting</li> </ul>
Default Cancel OK

Function Name	Description
[Starting Page:]	Specify the page to start printing the page number.
[Starting Page Number:]	Specify the start number for printing the page number.
[Cover Mode:]	Specify whether the page number is printed on the front cover page and the back cover page, when attaching the cover pages.
[Print Position:]	Specify the print position.

## **Editing Header/Footer**

Recall Header/Footer: Machine Setting1
Distribution Control Number:
Print in Header
✓ Print in Header
1
Print in Footer
Start Number: Put zeros in front Number only
Pages:
All Pages

Function Name	Description
[Recall Header/Footer:]	Select the header/footer setting registered in the machine.
[Distribution Control Number:]	When printing multiple copies, this function prints the number of copies in the header/footer. The start number or number of digits can be specified.
[Pages:]	Specify the pages to print the header/footer.

- .... -

# 9.5.9 [Quality]

Paper View     Detailed Information	Quality   Glossy Mode  Toner Save  Edge Enhancement
	Original Type: Document
Printer Information	Default
	Cancel Print

Function Name	Option	Description
[Glossy Mode]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to print using a gloss finish. It can be specified when Print Type is [1-Sided].
[Toner Save]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to adjust the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.
[Edge Enhance- ment]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to enhance the edges of charac- ters, graphics and images so that thin lines and small letters become clearly visible.
[Original Type:]	[Document], [Photo], [DTP], [Web], [CAD]	Select any of the options to print with a quality suitable for the selected original. [Document]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for documents with many characters. [Photo]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for photos. [DTP]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for documents produced by DTP. [Web]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for Web page printing. [CAD]: Select this option to print with a quality suitable for CAD data printing.
[Quality Adjust- ment]	-	Click this button to adjust the image quality. Adjust the text, photos, figures, tables, and graphs in each original.

# Print Functions of Mac OS 9.2

# 10 Print Functions of Mac OS 9.2

This chapter describes the functions of the printer driver for OS 9.2.

## 10.1 Print operations

Print jobs are specified from the application software.

- Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.
   → If the menu is not available, click [Print].
   The [Print] window appears.
- 2 Check that the desired printer name is selected in [Printer:].
  - → If the target printer is not selected, select it.
  - → If the printer does not appear, select the printer from [Chooser]. For details, refer to page 5-12.
  - → The [Print] window varies depending on the application software.
  - → The printer name can be changed if necessary. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name".

Printer: Printer Name	Destination: Printer	7.3 <b>\$</b>
General 🔶 🗕		_
Copies: 🚺 🗹 Collated		
Pages: @ All	:	
Den en Courses @ All mones from	Auto Select 🔷	
Paper Source: 🖲 All pages from:	Auto Select 🔶	
G First page from:	Tray1 \$	

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
- 4 Switch the setting window as necessary to change the printer driver settings.
  - → When you change the menu of [General], another setting window of the printer driver appears, allowing you to configure various functions. For details, refer to page 10-6.
  - → The printer driver settings changed in the [Print] window are not saved, and the original settings are restored when you exit the application.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed and the data indicator of the machine flashes.

10-3

## 10.2 Default settings of the printer driver

When you have installed the printer driver, you need to change the initialization conditions such as options and enable functions of the machine from the printer driver.

#### NOTICE

Any options that are installed in the machine but not configured cannot be used by the printer driver. Be sure to configure the settings for the installed options.

#### 10.2.1 Option settings

- 1 In the [Apple Menu] menu, select [Chooser].
- 2 Select the printer name.
- 3 Click [Setup...].
- 4 Click [Configure].

The option setting window appears.

Current Printer Description File (PPD) Sele "UVx.x.ppd"	ected:
Options Installed 1	
Paper Source Unit: 🗰 🖨	
Finisher: 🛋 💠	
Post Inserter:	
Punch Z-Fold Unit:	•
L	
Ca	incel OK

- → When the printer is specified as the LPR printer, double-click the LPR printer icon on the desktop, click [Change Setup...] in the [Printer] menu to display the option setting window.
- 5 Specify the options installed in the machine.
- 6 Click [OK].

The [Chooser] window appears again.

7 Close the [Chooser] window.

#### Reference

The option settings are displayed automatically when the printer driver is selected for the first time. For details, refer to page 5-12.

## 10.2.2 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

To register the settings, save the printer driver settings. For OS 9.2, click [Save Settings] in the [Print] window to save the settings.

Printer: Printer Name 🔶	8.7.3 Destination: Printer 🔶
Finishing Options 1	
Offset: Off 🜩 Output Tray: Default 🜩	
Binding Position: Left Bind 🜩	
Print Type: 2-Sided 💠	
Staple: Off +	
Punch: Off 🗢	
Save Settings	Cancel Print

#### Reference

For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 10-6.

#### Reference

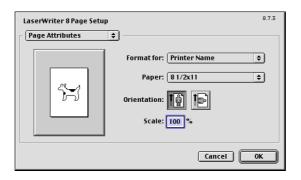
• The settings in the [Page Setup] dialog box cannot be saved.

## 10.3 Parameter details

The printer driver function settings can be configured in [Page Attributes] in the [Page Setup] dialog box or [Layout] or [Finishing Options] in the [Print] window.

#### 10.3.1 Page Attributes

From the [File] menu, select in [Page Setup].



Function Name	Description
[Paper:]	Specify the output paper size.
[Orientation:]	Select the orientation for the original.
[Scale:]	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.

#### Reference

• To use paper of which the size is other than the standard sizes, specify the custom paper size. For details on registering the custom size, refer to page 10-6.

#### 10.3.2 Specifying the custom page sizes

Select [Custom Page Sizes] in the [Page Setup] dialog box.

- 1 From the [File] menu, select [Page Setup].
- 2 Select [Custom Page Sizes].
- 3 Click [New].
- 4 Configure the following items.

Paper Size Width: 0 Height: 0 Width offset: 0 Height offset: 0	Margins Top: 0 Left: 0Right: 0 Bottom: 0
Custom Page Size Name:	Custom Page Size 1
Units: inches 🜲	Cancel OK

Function Name	Description
[Paper Size]	Specify the desired paper size.
[Margins]	Specify the paper margins.
[Custom Page Size Name]	Enter the registered name for the specified paper size or margins, and then click [OK].
[Units:]	Select the unit to specify the margins.

5 Click [OK].

This saves the custom page settings, which can be selected from the Paper drop-down list in [Page Attributes].

## 10.3.3 General

From the [File] menu, select [Print].

Printer: Printer Name	♦ Destination: Printer ♦
General 🔶 —	
Copies: 1 🗹 Collated	
Pages: @ All ② From: To	:
Paper Source: 🖲 All pages from:	Auto Select 🗢
<ul> <li>First page from:</li> </ul>	Tray1 \$
Remaining from:	Tray1 \$
Save Settings	Cancel Print

Function Name	Description
[Copies:]	Specify the number of copies to be printed.
[Collated]	Select this check box to collate pages sequentially when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Pages:]	Specify the page range to print.
[Paper Source]	Select the paper tray and paper type to be used.

## 10.3.4 [Layout] (Combination)

Specify this item to print multiple pages on one page.

Printer: Printer Name		estination: Printer \$
1	Pages per sheet:     Layout direction:     Border:	1 ¢ 12 21 none ¢
Save Settings		Cancel Print

Function Name	Description
[Pages per sheet:]	Multiple pages can be combined on a single page.
[Layout direction]	Specify the page combination order.
[Border:]	Specify the borders between pages.

## 10.3.5 Printer specific options (Finishing Option 1 to 5)

Specify the printer specific options. These options can be specified when functions of the machine such as stapling and punching are to be used.

Printer: Printer Name	8.7.3 Destination: Printer 🔶
Finishing Options 1	
Offset: Off 🔶	
Output Tray: Default 💠	
Binding Position: Left Bind 🔶	
Print Type: 2-Sided 💠	
Combination: Off 🔶	
Staple: Off 🗧	
Punch: Off 🗢	
Save Settings	Cancel Print

Function Name	Description
[Offset:]	Specify offset.
[Output Tray:]	Select the output tray.
[Binding Position:]	Specify the binding position.
[Print Type:]	Specify 1-Sided/2-Sided Print. To save paper, 2-Sided Print is the default setting.
[Combination:]	Perform booklet printing.
[Staple:]	Perform stapling.
[Punch:]	Perform hole punching.
[Fold]	Perform folding.
[Front Cover:]	Select this option to attach a front cover page.
[Front Cover Tray:]	Select the paper tray for the front cover sheet.
[Back Cover:]	Select this option to attach a back cover page.
[Back Cover Tray:]	Select the paper tray for the back cover sheet.
[Front Cover from Post In- serter]	Print a document with a front cover.
[Back Cover from Post In- serter]	Print a document with a back cover.
[Transparency Interleave:]	Select the option to insert interleaves between transparencies.
[Interleave Tray:]	Select the paper tray for the transparency interleaves.
[Output Method:]	Specify the [Proof Print] function that pauses the printing process after one copy of the document is output so that you can check how it is print- ed.
[Screen (Text):]	Select whether to use screening for the texts in the original.
[Screen (Photo):]	Select whether to use screening for the photos in the original.
[Smoothing (Photo):]	Select whether to use smoothing for the photos in the original.
[Glossy Mode:]	Select this check box to print using a gloss finish. It can be specified when Print Type is [1-Sided].
[Toner Save:]	Select this check box to adjust the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.
[Edge Enhancement:]	Select this check box to enhance the edges of characters, graphics and images so that thin lines and small letters become clearly visible.



Reference

- The [Staple:] function is available only when the optional **Finisher** is installed.
- The [Punch:] function is available only when the **Punch Kit** or **Z Folding Unit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- The [Fold:] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit** or **Z Folding Unit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- [Tri-Fold] in the [Fold:] function is available only when the **Saddle Kit SD-508** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-526**.
- [Z-Fold] in the [Fold:] function is available only when the **Z Folding Unit ZU-606** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-526**.
- To use the Z-Fold function, specify the paper size value (Z-Fold (A3, B4,  $11 \times 17$ , 8K), Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)), which you selected in the drop-down list, in [Paper Size] of the application or printer driver.
- If [Half-Fold] or [Tri-Fold] is specified for the [Fold:] function and multiple pages are printed, the unit of finishing varies depending on the setting of [User Settings] [Copier Settings] [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]) in the control panel. If [One Sheet at a Time] is specified for [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold/Specification]), printed sheets are folded page by page. If [Multiple Sheets] is specified, all sheets are folded together even if a job contains multiple pages. However, if the number of original pages exceeds the folding capacity of this machine, the [Fold:] function setting is cancelled automatically, and the sheets are printed without being folded."" When [Booklet] is selected simultaneously with [Half-Fold], all pages are half-folded together even if [One Sheet at a Time] is selected For details, refer to page 12-35.
- The [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter] function is available only if the optional **Post Inserter PI-505** is installed.
- [Front Cover from Post Inserter] and [Front Cover] or [Back Cover from Post Inserter] and [Back Cover] cannot be specified at the same time.

# **Function Details**

# **11** Function Details

This chapter describes the functions that require special attention, for example, when combining the printer driver and panel operation of the machine.

## 11.1 Proof Print

The Proof Print function is a feature used when printing out multiple copies. It allows the printer to output one copy and pause the printing operation before printing the remaining number of copies. Because this function allows confirming the printed result before outputting the remaining copies, it is helpful in preventing misprinting when producing a large number of copies.

The Proof Print function can be specified using the printer driver when printing, and printing of the remaining number of copies can be performed from the control panel.

#### 11.1.1 Setting the printer driver

The following five printer drivers support this feature.

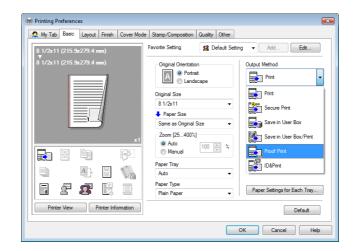
- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS 9.2

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- Output Method: [Proof Copy]
- Number of Copies: Multiple sets

#### **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Select [Proof Copy] in [Output Method].



3 Specify the desired number of copies and print.One copy is printed for checking.

#### For Mac OS X

11

- **1** Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select [Proof Print] in [Output Method:].

	Output Method
Paper View     Detailed Information     8 1/2×11     8 1/2×11	Collate
	ID&Print
Printer Information	Detail Settings Default Default
	Cancel Print

- 3 Specify the desired number of copies and print.
  - One copy is printed for checking.
  - → In OS 9.2, the proof printing can be selected at [Output Method:] in [Finishing Options 3] screen.

#### **11.1.2** Recalling a job from the control panel

#### Reference

- For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- 1 Press [Job List] on the control panel, and then press [Job Details].

	Ready to co	ру.		Copies: 1	
Check Job	Basic	riginal Setting 🚺 🤇	Original Type	Application	
	Density/ Background	Paper	Zoon	Duplex/ Combine	
Name Status	Density Constitut	Auto Paper Select	100. 0%	<b>○,•</b> )) ' • '	
	Corner Staple Top Left			The second se	
	Finishing	Separate Sca	an 📔 Auto Ro	Rotate OFF	
Delete					
Job Details					
Toner	08/23/2010 09:25			Language Selection 🕽	

The Print window appears.

2 While [Current Jobs] is displayed, press [Release Held Job].



The [Release Held Job] screen appears.

- **3** From the job list, select the job you want to print.
  - $\rightarrow$  To print the remaining number of copies, continue with Step 6.
  - $\rightarrow$  To change the printing conditions, continue with Step 4.

Job List	Select desired job to print and press [Start]. To copy 1 set for proofing, press [Proof Copy].
	Release Held Job
	No. NSEC Status Document Name Linged Org. Sec- 11 PRINTER Sebred Normalprint 13:23 1 1 Sheeven
Job Details	Gheriset.           Detail           10/09/2010         15:52

- → If the job you want to release is not displayed, press [ ↑ ] or [ ↓ ] until the desired job is displayed. If an incorrect job was selected, touch the button for the selected job again to deselect it.
- 4 Press [Change Setting].

The [Change Setting] screen appears.

- → To check the results of setting changes, select the job whose sample copy is to be printed from the job list, and then press the **Proof Copy** key on the control panel. One copy is printed for checking. After performing the **Proof Copy** key, the original settings are restored. Configure the settings again as necessary.
- 5 Change the printing conditions in the [Change Setting] screen, and then press [OK].

The [Release Held Job] screen appears again.

- → To cancel releasing the held job, press [Cancel].
- 6 Press [OK] or the **Start** key in the control panel.

The stored job is changed to an active job, and then printed.

# 11.2 Secure Print

The Secure Print function saves print jobs in the Secure Print User Box of the machine. Because the job is output only by entering the ID and password from the control panel, it is helpful for outputting highly confidential documents.

The Secure Print function can be specified using the printer driver when printing, and printing can be performed from the control panel.

In order to prevent information leakage, you can restrict the printings done on this machine only to the secure printing.

# Reference

For details on the function to limit to the secure printing only on the machine, refer to page 12-58.

For details on the printer driver settings for Windows, refer to page 8-5, and for Mac OS X, refer to page 9-5.

Reference

• When the secure printing is frequently used, it will be helpful to configure [Custom Display Settings] -[User Box Settings] of the machine so that [Secure Document User Box] always appears on the screen. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

# 11.2.1 Setting the printer driver

The following four printer drivers support this feature.

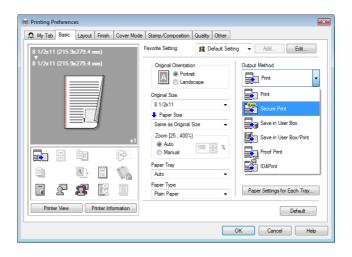
- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

• Output Method: [Secure Print]

#### **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Select [Secure Print] in [Output Method].



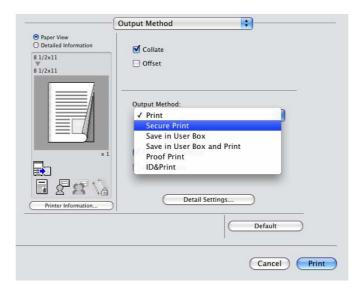
3 Enter the [Secure Print ID] and [Password].

	ure Print sure Print ID
	Max. 16
Pas	Max 8
	Max. 8
8	Operate the followings on the printer's control panel in order to use the documents which is printed by "secure print".
	[User Box]button -> [System] -> [Secure
	in User Box
File	Name
	Max. 30
	er Box Number
	Max. 9
	vpe in [Secure Print ID] and [Password] that are sed with [Secure Print].
u	*

- → When [Password Rules] is enabled on the machine, the passwords that can be used for secure printing are limited. If a password that does not comply with the password rules is entered, the job is deleted. For details on the [Password Rules], refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- 4 Print the document.
  - → The ID and password required for secure printing can be registered in advance on [User Settings...] of the [Basic] tab. To use the same ID and password whenever you print, register them in advance so that the screen to prompt entering the ID and password does not appear when you select [Secure Print].

# For Mac OS X

- 1 Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select [Secure Print] in [Output Method].



3 Enter the [Secure Print ID:] and [Password;].

Secure Print Secure Print ID:
Password:
Save Settings
Do not show this window when setting
Default Cancel OK

- → Selecting the [Save Settings] check box saves the settings. In addition, if the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, the dialog box does not appear when the function is specified.
- → When [Password Rules] is enabled on the machine, the passwords that can be used for secure printing are limited. If a password that does not comply with the password rules is entered, the job is deleted. For details on the [Password Rules], refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- 4 Print the document.

# 11.2.2 Recalling a job from the control panel

The [Secure Print] jobs are saved in the [Secure Document User Box]. To print a secured document, the ID and password that have been specified in the printer driver are required.

Reference

11

- Secured documents are automatically deleted after a certain length of time has elapsed since their registration. The default setting for this time is 1 day, and the value can be specified in the administrator mode. For details, refer to page 12-41.
- To manually delete a secured document that has been printed, operate in administrator mode. For details, refer to page 12-40.

# Reference

For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

For details on specifying the [Confidential Document Access Method], refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

# When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 1]

- **1** Press the **User Box** key on the control panel.
  - → Press [User Box] when the application menu is displayed.
- 2 Select [Secure Document User Box] in [System User Box], and then press [Use/File].



3 Enter the [ID] for the secure print document, and then press [OK].

Enter the ID for the secure print document. To clear your entry, press the ICl key.
12345678
z x c v b n n , . Z Shift
Space
01/09/2010 15:57 @ @☆ 预 <sup>1arge</sup> Cancel 0K
01/09/2010 15:57 Menory 99%

Enter the password for the secure print document, and then press [OK].If the specified ID and password match, the list of secure print documents appears.



5 Select the document to be printed on the [Print] tab, and then press [Print]. The contents and a preview of the document can be checked in [Document Details].

Job List	Select document choose the desi	(s) and then red function.			
Check Job	Print		Filing Settings		
Preview	Secure Print	User Box			
Selected Documents document 1	document 1	document 2		1/ 1	Print Settings
			(	Select All Reset	
↑ 1/ 1 ↓				Detail View	Document
Toner		:01 19%		Cance	

6 Change the print conditions as necessary.

Job List Check Job	To change document print settings, choose from the following options. If you are ready to print, touch [Start] or press [Start]. Print > Print Details		
Preview Buto Paper 100.0%	Basic	Application	
	Copies: 1	Page Margin	
U 8. 0	Print <b>1-Sided</b> 2-Sided		
		Sheet/Cover/ Chapter Insert	
	Finishing Combine Zoon	Stamp/ition	
Toner <b>IIII</b>	01/09/2010 16:01 Menory 99%	Cancel Start	

- 7 Press [Start] or the **Start** key in the control panel. The document is printed.
  - → To stop operations, press [Cancel].

# When the [Confidential Document Access Method] is set to [Mode 2]

- **1** Press the **User Box** key on the control panel.
  - → Press [User Box] when the application menu is displayed.
- 2 Select [Secure Document User Box] in [System User Box], and then press [Use/File].



Enter the [ID] for the secure print document, and then press [OK].The list of secure print documents matching the specified ID appears.

Enter the ID for the secure print document. To clear your entry, press the [C] key.
document. To creat your entry, press the for key.
10
12345678
a 5 d f 9 h j k l ; 2
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
Space
01/09/2010 15:57 Menory 99%

4 Select the document you want to print and then press [Enter Password].

Job List	Select docu choose the d	nent(s) and t desired funct	hen ion.		
Check Job	Print		Filing Settings	]	
	Secure Pr	int User Box			
Selected Documents document 1	Time Stored 15:56	User Name	Document Name document 1	1/ 1	Print Settings
	15:56	1	document 2		Password
				Select All	
				Reset	
↑ 1/ 1 ↓					
					_
Toner	01/09/2010 Memory	16:02 99%		Cance	

5 Enter the password for the secure print document, and then press [OK].

The list of secure print documents matching the specified password appears.

- → If [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] in Administrator Settings is set to [Mode 2] and a user enters an incorrect password the specified number of times, the document is locked. To release from the operation prohibition status, contact your administrator.
- 6 Select the document to be printed on the [Print] tab, and then press [Print].

The contents and a preview of the document can be checked in [Document Details].



7 Change the print conditions as necessary.

Job List	To change document print settings, choose from the following options. If you are ready to print, touch [Start] or press [Start].		
Preview	Print > Print Details		
Fleview	Basic	Application	
Auto Paper 100.0%			
	Copies: 1	Page Margin	
P 2 2	Print 1-Sided 2-Sided		
		Sheet/Cover/ Chapter Insert	
	Finishing Combine	Stamp/ Composition	
	Zoon		
Toner <b>I</b>	01/09/2010 16:01	Cancel Start	

- 8 Press [Start] or the **Start** key in the control panel.
  - $\rightarrow$  The document is printed.
  - → To stop operations, press [Cancel].

# 11.3 Save in User Box

The Save in User Box function saves print jobs in a User Box of the machine. Because the print jobs are printed by specifying the User Box from the control panel, this function can also be used for document distribution.

The Save in User Box function can be specified using the printer driver when printing, and printing or distribution can be performed from the control panel.

# Reference

For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

# 11.3.1 Setting the printer driver

The following four printer drivers support this feature.

- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

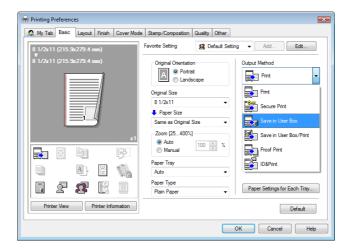
• Output Method: [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box/Print]

Reference

• Create the User Box for saving the data in advance with the User Box function of the machine. For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

# **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Select [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box/Print] in [Output Method].
  - → To save data in a User Box and print at the same time, select [Save in User Box/Print].



3 Enter the [File Name] of the document and the [User Box Number] for the save location.

d	Secure Print
	Secure Print ID
	Max. 16
	Password
	Max. 8
	[User Box]button -> [System] -> [Secure +
	File Name
	Max. 30
	User Box Number
	User Box Number

4 Print the document.

11

→ The file name and the User Box number required for saving data in the User Box can be registered in advance on [User Setting] of the [Basic] tab. To use the same file name and User Box number whenever you save documents, register them in advance so that the screen to prompt entering the file name and User Box number does not appear when you select [Save in User Box].

# For Mac OS X

- 1 Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box and Print] in [Output Method:].

Paper View     Detailed Information	Output Method
Detailed information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	✓ Collate □ Offset
	Output Method:
	✓ Print
	Secure Print Save in User Box
x:	Save in User Box and Print
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

3 Enter the [File Name:] of the document and the [User Box Number:] for the save location.

Save in User Box
File Name:
User Box Number:
Save Settings
Do not show this window when setting
 Default Cancel OK

- → Selecting the [Save Settings] check box saves the settings. In addition, if the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, the dialog box does not appear when the function is specified.
- 4 Print the document.

### 11.3.2 Recalling a job from the control panel

The [Save in User Box] and [Save in User Box/Print] jobs are saved in a User Box of the specified number.

To print a document saved in a User Box, open the specified box to retrieve the document. If a password is specified for the User Box, the User Box password is required.

Reference

 User Box documents are automatically deleted after a certain length of time has elapsed since their registration. The default setting for this time is 1 day, and the value can be specified when creating a User Box.

#### Reference

For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

- 1 Press the **User Box** key on the control panel.
  - → Press [User Box] when the application menu is displayed.
- 2 Select the desired User Box number, and then press [Use/File].

Boxes are classified as [Public] User Boxes, [Personal] User Boxes, or [Group] User Boxes. Specify the desired User Box from the classification of the saved User Boxes. The User Box number can be directly specified.

- → If a password is specified for the User Box, go to Step 3.
- → If a password is not specified for the User Box, go to Step 4.

Job List	Select the desired User Box to use or file document. Use the keypad to input and specify the box number to use	
	Public System User Box	Save Document
User Box Information	00000002 002	
User Box No. 00000002	000000001 001 002	1/ 1
User Box Name		
Type Public User Box		Search User Box
	Enter User Box No.	Use/File
Toner <b>IIII</b>	01/09/2010 16:04 Menory 99%	anguage Selection

3 Enter the User Box password, and then press [OK].

A list of documents in the specified User Box appears.

Enter the password of the selected User Box. To clear your entry, press the CCl key. 2 002				
User Box Password				
*****				
+ + Pere				
a 5 d f 9 h j k 1 ; •				
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift				
Space				
01/09/2010 16:05 Menory 99%				

4 Select the document to be printed on the [Print] tab, and then press [Print].

Job List	Select document(s) and then choose the desired function.	
Check Job	Print Send Sa	itings Application Save Document
	00000002 002	
Selected Documents document 1	document 1	1/     1       Print Settings       Print       Combine
		Select
		Reset
↑ 1/ 1 ↓ De- tail		Detail View Decument
Toner	01/09/2010 16:05 Menory 99%	Cancel

- → Documents saved in User Boxes can be transmitted via E-mail or fax. For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].
- 5 Change the print conditions as necessary.

Job List Check Job	<pre>To change document print settings, choose from the following options. If you are ready to print, touch [Start] or press [Start]. Print &gt; Print Details</pre>			
Preview	(	Basic		Application
Suffect <sup>aper</sup> 100.0%	Copies:	1		Page Margin
	Print	1-Sided	2-Sided	Sheet/Cover/ Chapter Insert
	Finishing Zoom		Combine	Stamp/ Composition
Toner <b>IIII</b>	01/09/2010 16:05 Menory 99%			Cancel Start

6 Press [Start] or the **Start** key in the control panel.

The document is printed.

→ To stop operations, press [Cancel].

When [User Authentication] is specified on the machine, a user name and password must be entered when printing.

The following four printer drivers support this feature.

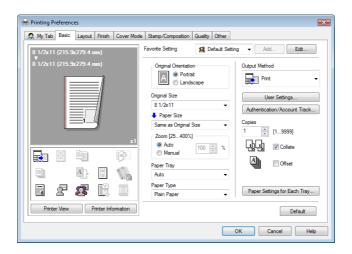
- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

Reference

- If you enter an incorrect user name or password for the [User Authentication] settings of this machine or have not enabled [User Authentication], you will not be authenticated by this machine and the job will be discarded when printing.
- If an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times while [User Authentication] settings are configured on the machine and [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] is set to [Mode 2], the user may be locked and access to the machine may be blocked.
- Even a registered user cannot print a document if the user is not allowed to print. For [user authentication], contact the administrator of the machine.
- Even when using an optional **Authentication Unit** for [User Authentication], enter the user name and password. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

# **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Click [Authentication/Account Track...].



- 3 Select [Recipient User], and then enter a [User Name] and [Password] that are registered with the machine.
  - → The user name and password can each contain up to 64 characters.
  - → If [Public User] access is allowed on the printer, the printer can be used by [Public User].
  - → The password can also be specified in the printer driver in advance as the default value, and individual jobs do not require password entry.

User Authentication	Account Track
Public User	Department Name
<ul> <li>Recipient User</li> <li>User Name</li> </ul>	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verify

- → When user authentication is performed with the PageScope Authentication Manager, you must enter the user information specified by the server administrator. The windows and input items that appear vary according to the settings. For details, contact your server administrator.
- 4 Click [OK] to determine the settings and start printing.

If the entered user name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.

- Reference
- If user authentication is not enabled in the [Configure] tab, user authentication will not be performed. If you are using the user authentication, be sure to enable it in the [Device Option] list. For details, refer to page 8-5.
- It is necessary to configure server settings when user authentication is performed with the server. Click [Server Setting...], and then select a server.
- Clicking [Verify] allows communication with this machine to confirm whether the entered user can be authenticated. This function is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with this machine.
- When authentication is performed with the PageScope Authentication Manager, in the [Administrator Settings] of this machine, set [System Connection] - [OpenAPI Settings] - [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.

# For Mac OS X

- **1** Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select the [User Authentication] check box.

	Output Method
Paper View     Detailed Information     8 1/2x11     8 1/2x11	☑ Collate
	Output Method: Print
x 1	User Authentication
	C Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	(Cancel) Print

- 3 Select [Recipient User], and then enter a [User Name:] and [Password:] that are registered with the machine.
  - → The user name and password can each contain up to 64 characters.
  - → If [Public User Access] access is allowed on the printer, the printer can be used by [Public User].

<u> </u>	<ul> <li>○ Public User</li> <li>● Recipient User</li> <li>User Name:</li> </ul>
	User01
	Password:
C	User Authentication Server Setting
	Do not show this window when setting

- → Selecting the [Save Settings] check box saves the settings. In addition, if the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, the dialog box does not appear when the function is specified.
- → When user authentication is performed with the PageScope Authentication Manager, you must enter the user information specified by the server administrator. The windows and input items that appear vary according to the settings. For details, contact your server administrator.
- 4 Click [OK] to determine the settings and start printing.

If the entered user name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.

Reference

- It is necessary to configure server settings when user authentication is performed with the server. Click [User Authentication Server Setting...], and then select a server.
- When authentication is performed with the PageScope Authentication Manager, in [Administrator Settings] of this machine, set [System Connection] - [OpenAPI Settings] - [Authentication] to [OFF]. For details, refer to page 12-55.

# 11.5 Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled

When the [Account Track] settings are configured on the machine, you must enter the account track code (access code) when printing.

The following four printer drivers support this feature.

- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

Reference

If you enter an incorrect access code for the [Account Track] settings on the machine or have not enabled [Account Track], you will not be authenticated by the printer and the job will be discarded when printing.

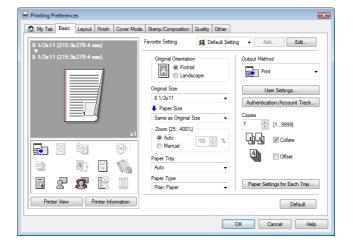
If an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times while the [Account Track] setting is configured on the machine and [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] is set to [Mode 2], the account will be locked and access to the machine will be blocked.

- Even a registered account cannot print a document if the account is not allowed to print.
- For account track, contact the administrator of the machine.

# 11.5.1 Setting the printer driver

#### **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Click [Authentication/Account Track...].



- 3 Enter an [Department Name] and [Password] that are registered with the machine.
  - → The account name and password can each contain up to 8 characters.
  - → The password can also be specified in the printer driver in advance as the default value, and individual jobs do not require password entry.

User Authentication	Account Track
Public User	Department Name
Recipient User	
User Name	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verify

4 Click [OK] to determine the settings and start printing.

If the entered access code is an access code enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified account.

#### Reference

- If account track is not enabled on the [Configure] tab, account track cannot be performed. If you are using account track, be sure to enable it in the [Device Option] list. For details, refer to page 8-5.
- Clicking [Verify] allows communication with the machine to confirm whether the entered account can be authenticated. This function is available only when your computer is connected to and can communicate with this machine.

# For Mac OS X

- 1 Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select the [Account Track] check box.

	Output Method
Paper View Detailed Information  1/2x11  1/2x11  1/2x11	Collate
	Output Method:
× 1	User Authentication
	C Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

- 3 Add an [Department Name:] and [Password:] that are registered with the machine.
  - → The account name and password can each contain up to 8 characters.

	Account Track
<b>S</b>	Department Name:
- <b>-</b>	Password:
	] Save Settings
	Do not show this window when setting
$\square$	Default Cancel OK

- → Selecting the [Save Settings] check box saves the settings. In addition, if the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, the dialog box does not appear when the function is specified.
- 4 Click [OK] to determine the settings and start printing.

If the entered access code is an access code enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified account.

# 11.6 ID & Print

When the ID & Print function is used, printing is started only after the user name and password entered from the control panel of the machine are accepted and the authentication process has been completed successfully. This is helpful in maintaining security of the document.

To use the ID & Print function, the user authentication must be completed on the machine.

When processing a print job from a computer, specify ID & Print after entering the user name and password from the printer driver.

Data to be printed in the ID & Print mode is saved in the [ID & Print User Box], and after printing, they are automatically deleted from the [ID & Print User Box]. You can also print the data saved in the [ID & Print User Box] by entering the user name and password from the control panel of the machine to log in to the printer.

When the optional Authentication Unit (biometric type) AU-101, Authentication Unit (biometric type) AU-102, or Authentication Unit (IC card type) AU-201 is used for [User Authentication], you can start printing or log in to this machine simply by touching the authentication unit with your finger or IC card.

# Reference

To enable the ID & Print function when printing a document from the commuter, specify the function from the printer driver. For details, refer to page 11-23.

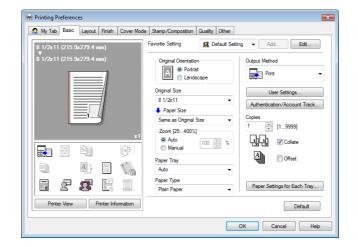
For details on the operation of the job saved in the [ID & Print User Box], refer to page 11-26.

For details on using the authentication unit for printing or logging in, refer to page 11-29.

# 11.6.1 Setting the printer driver

#### **For Windows**

- 1 Click to display the [Basic] tab.
- 2 Click [Authentication/Account Track...].



3 Select [Recipient User], enter the [User Name] and [Password] that are registered with the machine and click [OK].

Jser Authentication	Account Track
<ul> <li>Public User</li> <li>Recipient User</li> </ul>	Department Name
User Name	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Venfy

- → For details on the user authentication, refer to page 11-17.
- → If [User Authentication/Account Track] [User Authentication Settings] [Administrative Setting] -[ID & Print Settings] - [Public User] is set to [Save] in the [Administrator Settings] of the machine and the public user job is permitted, public user jobs are also saved in the [ID & Print User Box]. For details, refer to page 12-45.
- 4 Select [ID&Print] in [Output Method].

🖷 Printing Preferences				
2 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Compo	sition Quality Other			
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	2 Default Setting  Add Edit			
	Potrat Landscape Pirrt Pirrt 20 riginal Size Sacure Pirrt 4.00%1			
Paper Tray	▼ ID&Print			
Paper Type Plain Paper	Paper Settings for Each Tray			
Printer View Printer Information Default				
OK Cancel Help				

- → If [User Authentication/Account Track] [User Authentication Settings] [Administrative Setting] [ID & Print Settings] [ID & Print] is set to [ON] in the [Administrator Settings] of the machine, general print jobs are also saved in the [ID & Print User Box]. For details, refer to page 12-45.
- 5 Print the document.

# For Mac OS X

- **1** Display the [Output Method] window.
- 2 Select the [User Authentication] check box.

Paper View     Detailed Information     8 1/2x11	Output Method
8 1/2×11	Offset
	Output Method: Print
	User Authentication
Printer Information	Detail Settings Default
	Cancel Print

3 Select [Recipient User], enter the [User Name:] and [Password:] that are registered with the machine and click [OK].

	User Authentication
8	Recipient User User Name:
	User01
	Password:
	User Authentication Server Setting
	Save Settings Do not show this window when setting
	Default Cancel OK

- $\rightarrow$  For details on the user authentication, refer to page 11-17.
- → If [User Authentication/Account Track] [User Authentication Settings] [Administrative Setting] -[ID & Print Settings] - [Public User] is set to [Save] in the [Administrator Settings] of the machine and the public user job is permitted, public user jobs are also saved in the [ID & Print User Box]. For details, refer to page 12-45.

4 Select [ID&Print] in [Output Method:].

11

	Output Method
Paper View     Detailed Information     8 1/2x11     8 1/2x11	Collate
	ID&Print
	Default
	Cancel Print

- → If [User Authentication/Account Track] [User Authentication Settings] [Administrative Setting] [ID & Print Settings] [ID & Print] is set to [ON] in the [Administrator Settings] of the machine, general print jobs are also saved in the [ID & Print User Box]. For details, refer to page 12-45.
- 5 Print the document.

### 11.6.2 Recalling a job from the control panel

#### Reference

• For a public user, a document can be printed by opening the ID & Print User Box after logging in as a public user.

#### Entering the user information and printing

- 1 Enter the [User Name] and [Password] from the control panel of the printer.
  - → If the control panel shows a screen that appears after logging in, for example, when public user access is allowed without requiring to log in, logging out by pressing the Access key brings up a login screen.



2 Press [Begin Printing].

Once the user is authenticated, the print job is printed.

- → Press [Print & Login] to enable printing of the job and normal login.
- → Press [Login] for the normal login without printing the job. After logging in, open the [ID & Print User Box] to print the document.
- → If there are multiple print jobs, all the jobs are printed. To select the documents to print, press [Login] and then print the desired documents from the [ID & Print User Box].
- → When the optional Authentication Unit is installed, [ID & PW] and [Auth. Unit] appear. By selecting a button, the ID & PW or authentication unit can be selected and used as the authentication method.

# Printing a document by specifying it from the [ID & Print User Box]

Reference

- When the [ID & Print User Box] is frequently used, it will be helpful to configure [Custom Display Settings] - [User Box Settings] of the machine so that [ID & Print User Box] always appears on the screen. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].
- 1 Enter the [User Name] and [Password] from the control panel of the printer.

Job List	To print document(s) in the ID & Print User Box, enter user name and password and then touch [Begin Printing]. To check document(s) prior to printing, touch [Login].
Name Status	
	User Name
	Password
+ +	
Delete	
Job Details	Begin Printing Print & Login Login
Toner	01/09/2010 16:10 Memory 100%

2 Press [Login].

Log in to the machine.

- 3 Press the User Box key on the control panel.
  - → Press [User Box] when the application menu is displayed.
- 4 Select [ID & Print User Box] in [System User Box], and then press [Use/File].

Job List	Select the desired User Box to use or file Use the keypad to input and specify the bo	document. x number to use.
Check Job	Public Personal System Deer Box	Save Document)
Kang Status	Bulletin Board Polling TX User Box User Box Se	Ure Document User Box Berugted Por User Box User Box User Box
Delete Job Details Toner	Enter User Box No. 01/09/2010 16:11 Memory 99%	Use/File Language Selection

- 5 Select the document you want to print and then press [Print].
  - → The contents and a preview of the document can be checked in [Document Details].

Job List	Select document(s) choose the desired	and then function.			
Check Job	Print		Filing Settings		
Preview	ID & Print User Box				
Selected Documents document 1		document 2		1/ 1	Print Settings
				Select Reset	
+ 1/ 1 +				Detail View	Document Details
Toner	01/09/2010 16:11 Monory 009			Cancel	

- → To stop operations, press [Cancel].
- 6 When a screen confirming the deletion of the job appears, select the processing method.
  - → Selecting [Print & Delete] prints and deletes the document in the [ID & Print User Box].

Job List		e selected document after pr o delete after printing, se elete Document].	rinting, select lect [Start] or	
	Print Setti	1195		
Vser Status				
		<sup>1</sup>	<b>%</b>	
		Print & Delete	Print	
Delete				
Job Details				
Topor	01/09/2010	16:11	Cance1	

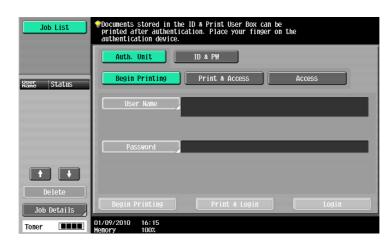
The document is printed.

#### Reference

• When [System Settings] - [User Box Settings] - [ID & Print Delete after Print Setting] is set to [Confirm with User] in [Administrator Settings] of the machine, printing a document by specifying from [ID & Print User Box] displays the screen to confirm the deletion of the job. For details, refer to page 12-43.

# Logging in using the authentication unit

1 Press [Auth. Unit], and then press [Begin Printing].



2 Touch the authentication unit with the finger or IC card.

To log in, touch the authentication unit.

- Once the user is authenticated, the print job is printed.
- → Press [Print & Access] to enable printing of the job and a normal login.
- → Logging in by pressing [Access] allows you to log in as usual without printing a job. After logging in, open the [ID & Print User Box] to print the document.
- → If [ID & Print Operation Settings] is set to [Print All Jobs] when there are multiple jobs, all jobs are output in a single authentication. If it is set to [Print Each Job], the jobs are printed one by one in the order they have been stored.

#### Reference

- You can specify [ID & Print Operation Settings] in [User Authentication/Account Track] [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Setting] - [ID & Print Operation Setting] of the [Administrator Settings] of the machine. For details, refer to page 12-46.
- To select the documents to print when there are multiple print jobs, press [Access] and then print the desired documents from the [ID & Print User Box].
- Even when the authentication unit is installed, you can enter the user information and print using [ID & PW]. For details, refer to page 11-26.
- To change the operation ([Begin Printing], [Print & Access], or [Access]) selected in the initial page, select [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] -[Administrative Settings] - [Default Operation Selection]. For details, refer to page 12-47.

#### Reference

• For details on the optional Authentication Unit, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

# **11.7** Printing from a cellular phone or PDA

Configure settings to wirelessly connect this machine to a cellular phone or PDA with the Bluetooth function installed and to print data stored in such a terminal or save it in a User Box of this machine.

# 11.7.1 Operating environment

The cellular phones and PDAs that can be connected to this machine and the printable file type must satisfy the following conditions.

#### **Operating environment**

Communication protocol	Bluetooth Ver. 2.0 + EDR
Supporting profile	OPP/BPP/SPP
Supporting file type	<ul> <li>PDF/Compact PDF/XPS/Compact XPS/TIFF/JPEG/XHTML/Repli-Go</li> <li>For XHTML file types, the machine supports the character code of UTF-8/Shift-JIS/ISO-8859 and the link file extensions of JPEG/JPG/PNG.</li> <li>This machine supports RepliGo version 2.1.0.8.</li> </ul>
PIN code	4-digit number

#### Reference

- To print documents from a cellular phone or PDA, the optional **Local Interface Kit EK-605** is required. The settings for enabling a Bluetooth communication are also required. Contact your service representative in advance.
- If you cannot access the link file when attempting to print an XHTML file, the document will either not be printed or will be printed in a black frame depending on the setting in [User Settings] [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] [Link File Error Notification]. For details, refer to page 12-31.
- To access the link file for printing an XHTML file, [WebDAV Settings] of this machine is required. To use a proxy for connection, register a proxy server in [Administrator Settings] - [Network Settings] - [Web-DAV Settings] - [WebDAV Client Settings] - [Proxy Server Address], and set [User Settings] - [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] - [Proxy Server Use] to [ON]. For details, refer to page 12-32.
- The communication speed may drop or communication may be interrupted due to obstacles, signal quality, magnetic field or static electricity.
- Protected documents and image data may not be sent depending on the security setting of the cellular phone or PDA.

#### **11.7.2** Printing a document

#### Reference

- To print from a cellular phone or PDA, set [Administrator Settings] [System Connection] [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] to [Allow] in advance. For details, refer to page 12-56. To use a Bluetooth communication, [Bluetooth Setting] must be enabled in this machine. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].
- When [User Authentication] is specified on this machine, even a registered user cannot print a document unless printing from a cellular phone or PDA is allowed in the machine setting. For user authentication, contact the administrator of the machine.
- For details on the User Box functions of the machine, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].
- For the operation of a cellular phone or PDA, refer to the operation manual of the cellular phone or PDA.
- 1 Set the cellular phone or PDA to enable Bluetooth communication.
- 2 Press the **User Box** key on the control panel.
  - → Press [User Box] when the application menu is displayed.

3 Select [Mobile/PDA] in [System User Box], and press [Use/File].



- 4 Press [Print List].
  - → To save data in a User Box, press [Save in User Box], and select the desired User Box.

Job List	Select an operation.
	Mobile/PDA
User Box Information	A file received from a mobile phone or PDA can be printed.
	A file received from a mobile phone or PDA Can be saved in a User Box.
Toner <b>III</b>	01/09/2010 16:19 Menory 99%

5 Check the displayed PIN code.

Job List	To start data reception, enter the PIN code using a Mobile Phone or PDA.
Name Status	
	PIN Code DOD1
Delete	
Job Details	Check Print Settings

- 6 Select this machine in the cellular phone or PDA.
  - → Select the data you want to send if it is selectable.

- 7 Enter the 4-digit PIN code into the cellular phone or PDA.
  - → You can check the print setting in [Check Print Settings].

Once the PIN code is verified, connection is established and data transmission and printing start.

# Reference

You can configure print settings from the cellular phone or PDA in [User Setting] - [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] - [Print]. For details, refer to page 12-33.

# 11.8 Specifying the encryption passphrase by the user

The machine and the printer driver communicate with each other by encrypting a user password, account password or secure document password using a common encryption key.

Although an encryption passphrase for generating the common encryption key is preset as a default setting, it can also be generated with a user-defined encryption passphrase.

To specify a user-defined encryption passphrase, specify the same encryption passphrase both for the machine and the printer driver.

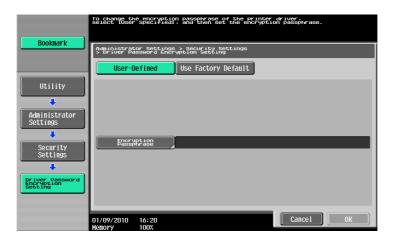
Reference

- If different values are used for the encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver, the machine cannot decrypt the encrypted user password, account password or secure document password, and printing cannot be performed.
- The common encryption key is automatically generated by the [Encryption Passphrase]. The common encryption key cannot be specified directly.

#### 11.8.1 Settings for the machine

Go to Administrator Settings to configure the settings for the machine.

- 1 In the [Administrator Settings] screen, press [Security Settings].
- 2 In the [Security Settings] screen, press [Driver Password Encryption Setting].
- **3** Press [User-Defined].
  - → If you do not specify a user-defined [Encryption Passphrase], press [Use Factory Default].



4 Press [Encryption Passphrase].

5 Press [Encryption Passphrase], and then enter the encryption passphrase.

Use the keyboard or keypad to enter the new encryption passphrase You must chiefer the encryption passphrase twice to confirm. Press (C) to erase the encryption passphrase.
Administrator Settings > Driver Password Encryption Settings > Encryption Passphrase
Encryption www.www.www.www.www.www.
Encryption Pass- phrase Confirmation
asdfghjkl;
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
01/09/2010 16:28 Henory 100X

- → Enter the [Encryption Passphrase] with 20 alphanumeric letters. Specify the same [Encryption Passphrase] for the machine and the printer driver.
- → An encryption passphrase using a series of the same letters (for example, "1111") is invalid.
- 6 Press [Encryption Passphrase Confirmation], and then enter the encryption passphrase again.

Use the keyboard or keybad to enter the new encryption passphrase passphrase passphrase passphrase. Passphrase.
Administrator Settings > Driver Password Encryption Settings > Encryption Passphrase
Encryption xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
Encryption Pass- phrase Confirmation Reconstruction
• Pête
q w e r t y u i o p t 1 N
a s d f 9 h j k 1 ; 2
Z X C V B N N , . / Shift
01/09/2010 16:28 Menory 100%

7 Press [OK].

This sets the encryption passphrase.

### 11.8.2 Setting the printer driver

The following four printer drivers support this feature.

- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Printer Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Printer Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

#### **For Windows**

- 1 Display the Properties window.
  - → The Properties window can be displayed by opening the [Printers] or [Printers and Faxes] window and right-clicking the icon of the installed printer, and then clicking [Properties].
- 2 Click the [Configure] tab.
- 3 Select the [Encrypt. Passphrase] check box, and then enter the encryption passphrase.
  - → If you do not specify a user-defined [Encrypt. Passphrase], clear the [Encrypt. Passphrase] check box.

			BHDD	Device Option
Paper Tray ]				
Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Typ	
Tray1	8 1/2x11	🖓 LEF	Plain Paper	
	8 1/2x11	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper	
	8 1/2x11	🖓 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray4	8 1/2x11	🗗 LEF	Plain Paper	r
Paper T	ray Settings			
Obtain <u>D</u> e	vice Information	n Encrypt	ion Passphrase	Software <u>T</u> ools Web Connection
Obtair	n <u>S</u> ettings			1 Start

- → Enter the [Encrypt. Passphrase] with 20 alphanumeric letters. Specify the same [Encrypt. Passphrase] for the machine and the printer driver.
- → An encryption passphrase using a series of the same letters is invalid.
- → When OpenAPI is used and SSL is enabled, it is possible for the machine to obtain the common encryption key provided that the device information of the printer driver can be obtained automatically.
- 4 Click [OK].

# For Mac OS X

11

- 1 Display the [Output Method] window.
- Click [Detail Settings...].
   The [Detail Settings] window appears.
- 3 Select [Administrator Settings], and then click [Settings...].

	Detai	l Settings	_	
Settings:				
conigs.				
▶ Secure Print				
Save in User Box				
<ul> <li>User Authentication</li> <li>Account Track</li> </ul>				
Administrator Settings				
Expand All	ollapse All	)		
	Set	tings		
				ОК

The [Administrator Settings] dialog box appears.

- 4 Select the [Encryption Passphrase:] check box, and then enter the encryption passphrase.
  - → If you do not specify a user-defined [Encryption Passphrase:], clear the [Encryption Passphrase:] check box.

	Administrator Settings
Jser A	uthentication/Account Track
Popu	p Authentication Dialog when printing
(	User Authentication
(	Account Track
	Secure Print
ncryp	tion Passphrase
Er	ncryption Passphrase:
_	
	uthentication Server Settings
	nced Server:
	nced Server:

- → Enter the [Encryption Passphrase:] with 20 alphanumeric letters. Specify the same [Encryption Passphrase:] for the machine and the printer driver.
- $\rightarrow$  An encryption passphrase using a series of the same letters is invalid.
- 5 Click [OK].



# **11.9** Banner printing function

On this machine, paper size up to 47-1/4 inches (1200 mm) in length can be loaded into the bypass tray for printing, by configuring on the control panel.

In the following sections, loading long paper and printing on it are referred to as banner printing.

# 11.9.1 Paper

# Applicable paper

Paper width	Paper length	Paper weight
8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 to 297 mm)	18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1200 mm)	33-13/16 to 55-7/8 lb (127 to 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) (Select the paper type appropriate for the banner paper weight using the printer driver.) 33-13/16 lb to 41-3/4 lb (127 to 157 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Thick 1+, Thick 1+ (Side 2) 42 to 55-5/8 lb (158 to 209 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Thick 2, Thick 2 (Side 2) 55-7/8 lb (210 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Thick 3, Thick 3 (Side 2))

#### 11.9.2 Printer drivers and supported operating systems

The following drivers support banner printing.

- KONICA MINOLTA PCL Driver for Windows (PCL driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript Driver for Windows (PS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA XPS Printer Driver for Windows (XPS driver)
- KONICA MINOLTA PostScript PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

#### 11.9.3 Configuring the printer driver

Specify the output paper size as a custom paper size.

# **For Windows**

- ✓ If the **Finisher FS-526** is installed, banner printing is disabled.
- ✓ If the Finisher FS-526 is set to the installed state for the printer driver properties, you cannot specify a paper length of 18 inches (457.3 mm) or more for the custom paper size. Select [None] for [Finisher] in the [Configure] tab of the printer driver.
- 1 Click the [Basic] tab.
  - → With the KONICA MINOLTA PCL Driver, custom size setting can also be registered in advance on the [Settings] tab of the printer driver accessed from the Windows' [Printers] ([Printers and Faxes] for Windows XP/Server 2003) window.
- 2 Select [Custom Size] from [Original Size] or [Paper Size].

The [Custom Size Settings] dialog box appears.

- 3 Select the width and the length of the custom size according to the unit you use and then click [OK]. The [Confirm setting changes] dialog box appears.
- 4 Click [Yes].
- 5 If necessary, configure [Paper Settings for Each Tray...], [Bypass Tray], [Paper Type], and other settings.
- 6 Click [OK].

#### For Mac OS X

- ✓ If the Finisher FS-526 is installed, banner printing is disabled.
- 1 From the [File] menu, select [Page Setup] (or [Page Setup]).
- 2 Open the window for registering a custom size.
  - → For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, select [Manage Custom Sizes...] from the Paper Size list.
  - → For Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, select [Custom Paper Size] from [Settings:].
- 3 Click [+] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [New] (OS X 10.2/10.3).
- 4 Enter the paper size name.
  - → Be sure to use paper size names other than existing names, such as A4 and Custom.
- 5 Configure the following items.
  - → Page Size (Paper Size): Specify the desired banner size. This value must be in the allowable range of banner size (paper width: 8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 to 297 mm), paper length: 18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1200 mm)).
  - → Printer Margins: Specify the paper margins.
- 6 Click [OK] for OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6 or click [Save] for OS X 10.2/10.3. The custom paper size is then registered.
- 7 Select the created custom paper size from the paper size in [Page Attributes]. For Mac OS X10.5/10.6, you can also select the paper size from [Paper Size:] on the Print window.
- 8 Select [Print][] in the [File] menu to display the Print window.
- 9 Check that [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray/Output Tray] is set to [Bypass Tray] and [Paper Type:] is set to the desired paper type ([Thick 1 to Thick 3] etc.), and also they are grayed out to prevent them from being changed.
  - → If [Paper Type:] is invalid, specify the paper type in [Paper Settings for Each Tray...].
  - → If the specified paper size is not in the allowable range of the banner size, [Paper Tray:] or [Paper Type:] is not grayed out to enable you to change them. In this case, check the setting of the custom paper size.

	Paper Tray / Output Tray	•
<ul> <li>Paper View</li> <li>Detailed Information</li> </ul>	Paper Tray:	
custom_long	Bypass Tray Paper Type: Thick 2	¢
*1	Paper Settings for Each Tra Output Tray: Default	ay
Printer Information		
		Default

**10** If necessary, specify other items, and click [Print].

#### Reference

 If the specified paper size or paper type is not in the allowable range of the banner size, an error message is displayed when printing, or the job is discarded, resulting in a printing failure.

# 11.9.4 Printing

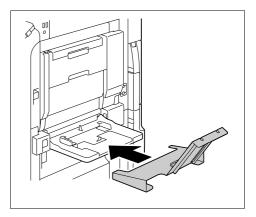
- ✓ If the **Finisher FS-526** is installed, banner printing is disabled.
- 1 Press the [Utility/Counter] key on the control panel.
- 2 Press [Banner Printing].
- 3 Press [Allow], and then the [OK].

Job List Bookmark		banner printing, choose [Allow].	T
Utility Banner Printing	Utility > I	Banner Printing Allow Restrict	
	10/06/2008 Menory	15:04 100%	ж

4 Check that the screen shows the machine is waiting for the banner printing job before sending the document data of the banner size to be printed from the computer.

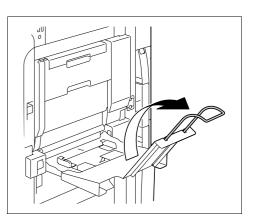
Job List	Banner will be printed. A banner print job is in the queue.
Name Status	
	Touch [Exit] to quit banner printing.
Delete	
	Exit
Toner <b>IIII</b>	10/06/2008 15:04 Memory 100%

- → If data of non-banner size is sent, the job will be discarded.
- **5** Open the Bypass Tray.
- 6 Install the Mount Kit to the Bypass Tray.

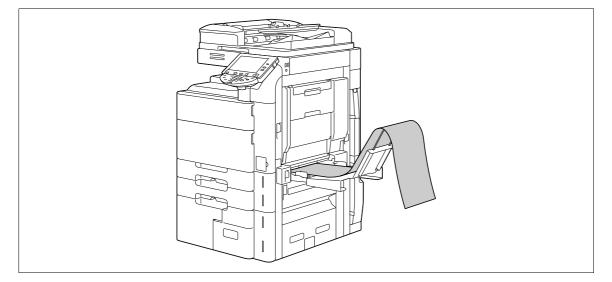


7 Set the Guide of the Mount Kit.

11



- 8 With the side to be printed on facing down, insert the paper as far as possible into the feed slot. Place as many sheets as the specified number of copies to be printed into the tray.
- 9 Slide the Lateral Guides of the Bypass Tray to make it fit to the size of paper being loaded.



10 When the following screen appears, press [Complete].

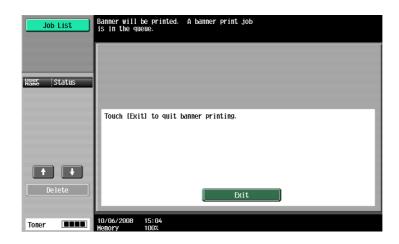
Job List	Correctly p	osition	ı paper ir	the bypass tray.
	Banner	:	X19% Y11%	Thick 2
Hame Status PRINTE Print Err				
Delete				2 Complete
	03/26/2009 Menory	16:00 99%		

Printing of the data starts.

Print while holding by hand the paper to be printed and output.

To print another document successively, send its data from the computer.

**11** To finish printing, press [Exit].



12 Press [Yes].

Job List		Are you	sure	you	want	to	quit	banner	printing?	
Delete	04/13/200	9 15:	12 😵		Yes				No	

# 12 Settings on the Control Panel

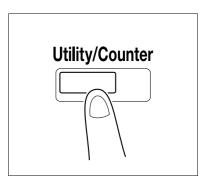
# 12 Settings on the Control Panel

This chapter describes the printer-related functions that can be specified from the control panel.

# 12.1 Basic operations of User Settings

# 12.1.1 Displaying the User Settings screen

**1** Press the **Utility/Counter** key.



2 Press [User Settings].



The User Settings screen appears.

12

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a	selection.
Bookmark		
DUUKIIdr K	Utility > User Settings	
		1/2 * ←Back For- → #
Utility	1 System Settings	
User Settings	2 Custom Display Settings	
	3 Copier Settings	
	4 Scan/Fax Settings	
	5 Printer Settings	
	01/09/2010 16:30 Memory 100%	Close

→ It can also be selected by pressing the key in the keypad of the number indicated on the desired button.

For [User Settings], press the 2 key in the keypad.

- → To finish configuring the Utility mode settings, press the Utility/Counter key. You can also exit the Utility screen by pressing [Close] until either the Copy, Fax/Scan or User Box screen appears.
- → To return through the hierarchy of the Utility menu, press [Close] until the desired screen appears. Alternatively, press an item in the upper hierarchy in the sub-menu area to return to the item.

# 12.2 User settings

# 12.2.1 PDL Setting

Configure settings for the Page Description Language. (Default: [Auto])

- [Auto]: Select this option to automatically switch between PCL and PS.
- [PCL]: Select this option to use PCL only.
- [PS]: Select this option to use PS only.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.

	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Job List	use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	
	Utility > User Settings
	1/2 * 🖛 Back 📴 🕂 #
Utility	1 System Settings
User Settings	2 Custon Display Settings
	3 Copier Settings
	4 Scan/Fax Settings
	5 Printer Settings
	01/09/2010 16:30 Kenory 100X

2 Press [Basic Settings].

Job List	Use the men	u buttons or keypad to	make a sele	ection.
Bookmark	Utility >	User Settings > Printe	r Settings	
Utility	1	Basic Settings	6	Print Reports
User Settings	2	Paper Setting	7	TIFF Image Paper Setting
Printer Settings	3	PCL Settings		
	4	PS Setting		
	5	XPS Settings		
	01/09/2010 Memory	16:30 100%		Close

3 Press [PDL Setting].



12

Job List	Select job setting.	
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Basic Settings	3
	PDL Setting Aut	o Job Setting
Utility	Number of Copies	1 Auto
User Settings	Original Direction Portr	ait PCL
↓ Printer Settings	Spool Print Jobs In HDD before RIP ON	PS
•	A4/A3++LTR/LGR Auto Switch 0Fl	
Basic Settings	↑ 1/2 ↓	
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%	ОК

#### 12.2.2 Number of Copies

Specify the default number of sets. (Default: 1)

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- **3** Press [Number of Copies].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
	PDL Setting	Auto	
Utility	Number of Copies	1	
User Settings	Original Direction	Portrait	
Printer Settings	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	ON	
	A4/A3++LTR/LGR Auto Switch	OFF	
Basic Settings	1/2		
	01/09/2010 16:31		ОК

- 4 Press the **C** key to clear the value, and then use the keypad to enter the number of sets. (1 to 9999)
  - → If a value outside of the allowable range is specified, the message "Input error" appears. Enter a number within the allowable range.



5 Press [OK].

The number of sets is specified.

# 12.2.3 Original Direction

Specify the default image direction. (Default: [Portrait])

- [Portrait]: Select this option to print the image vertically.
- [Landscape]: Select this option to print the image horizontally.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Press [Original Direction].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	PDL Setting	Auto	
	Number of Copies	1	
User Settings	Original Direction	Portrait	
₽rinter Settings	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	ON	
+	A4/A3++LTR/LGR Auto Switch	OFF	
Basic Settings	₱ 1/2		
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.



# 12.2.4 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

Specify the spool function. (Default: [ON])

- [ON]: When the next job is received while processing a job, the print data is stored in HDD.
- [OFF]: The print data is not stored in HDD.

#### Reference

12

- Normally, do not change this setting to [OFF]. Otherwise, normal printing may be interfered.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Press [Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	PDL Setting	Auto	
	Number of Copies	1	
User Settings	Original Direction	Portrait	
₽rinter Settings	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	ON	
	A4/A3++LTR/LGR Auto Switch	OFF	
Basic Settings	1/2		
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.



When the paper of the size specified with the printer driver is not loaded on the tray, size conversion between A4 and Letter, or A3 and Ledger is executed to use paper of the next most similar size. (Default: [OFF])

Reference

- The image may be affected since printing is forced.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Select [A4/A3<->LTR/LGR Auto Switch].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Basi	c Settings	
	PDL Setting	Auto	
Utility	Number of Copies	1	
User Settings	Original Direction	Portrait	
₽rinter Settings	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	ON	
+	A4/A3++LTR/LGR Auto Switch	OFF	
Basic Settings			
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Bas	sic Settings	
	PDL Setting	Auto	Job Setting
Utility	Number of Copies	1	ON
User Settings	Original Direction	Portrait	OFF
Printer Settings	Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	ON	
↓ ↓	A4/A3++LTR/L6R Auto Switch	OFF	
Basic Settings	1/2		
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		OK

bizhub 652/552

# 12.2.6 Banner Sheet Setting

12

Specify whether to print the banner page (cover page) showing the sender or title of the print job. (Default: [OFF])

- [ON]: Select this option to print the banner page.
- [OFF]: Select this option to not print the banner page.
- **1** In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Banner Sheet Setting].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	
•	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	
↓ Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings			
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	Job Setting
•	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	ON
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	OFF
↓       Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings	<b>↑</b> 2/2 <b>↓</b>		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Menory 100%		ОК

# 12.2.7 Binding Direction Adjustment

Specify the method for paper arrangement (adjusting the binding position) for 2-sided printing. (Default: [Fin-ishing Priority])

To increase the print efficiency, specify [Productivity Priority]. If the desired binding position and width cannot be achieved, specify [Finishing Priority].

- [Finishing Priority]: All pages can be processed to an optimum condition because the machine adjusts the binding positions after receiving the print data.
- [Productivity Priority]: Printing is performed efficiently because the printer processes data while receiving or printing concurrently.
- [Control Adjustments]: The printer follows the settings configured in the printer driver without adjusting the binding position.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Binding Direction Adjustment].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	
Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings	<b>↑</b> 2/2 <b>↓</b>		
	01/09/2010 16:31 Menory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.			
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Basic Settings			
	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	Job Setting	
Utility	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	Finishing Priority	
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	Productivity Priority	
↓ Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	Control Adjustments	
L				
Basic Settings	<b>1</b> 2/2			
	01/09/2010 16:32 Menory 100%		ОК	

# 12.2.8 Line Width Adjustment

12

Line width can be adjusted so that thin lines and small letters become easy to see. (Default: [Thin])

- [Thin]: Select this option to draw letters and lines sharply. Details of letters and figures are printed elaborately.
- [Normal]: Select this option to draw letters and lines with a normal thickness.
- [Thick]: Select this option to draw letters and lines thickly. Letters and figures are printed clearly.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Line Width Adjustment].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	
•	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	
Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings			
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	Job Setting
	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	Thin
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	Normal
Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	Thick
Basic Settings	t 2/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Memory 100%		ОК



Letters or lines on a gray background may look thicker than those on a non-gray background. This feature allows you to correct the line width setting.

- [ON]: Select this option to make the width of letters and lines on a gray background identical to that of those letters and lines on a non-gray background.
- [OFF]: Select this option to not make a correction.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Basic Settings].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Gray Background Text Correction].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
Utility	Banner Sheet Setting	OFF	
•	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	
Printer Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings			
	01/09/2010 16:31 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Ba	sic Settings	
	Banner Sheet Setting	0FF	Job Setting
Utility	Binding Direction Adjustment	Finishing Priority	ON
User Settings	Line Width Adjustment	Thin	OFF
₽rinter Settings	Gray Background Text Correction	ON	
Basic Settings	↑ 2/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Menory 100%		ОК

# 12.2.10 Paper Tray

12

Specify the default paper tray setting. (Default: [Auto])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.			
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings > Printer Settings			
Utility	1	Basic Settings	6	Print Reports
User Settings	2	Paper Setting	7	TIFF Image Paper Setting
Printer Settings	3	PCL Settings		
	4	PS Setting		
	5	XPS Settings		
	01/09/2010 Menory	16:30 100%		Close

3 Press [Paper Tray].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
Utility	Paper Tray	Auto	
	Paper Size	8h×11	
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	
₽rinter Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
<b>•</b>	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:32		ОК

- 4 Press the button for the desired paper tray.
  - → To select the paper tray automatically, press [Auto].

Job List	Specify the paper tray to be used when it is not specified from the printer driver.
	Utility > Paper Settings > Paper Tray
Utility	Auto
User Settings	
₽rinter Settings	
Paper Setting	3 A4 D
Paper Tray	08/26/2010 15:37 Menory 100%

5 Press [OK].

#### 12.2.11 Paper Size

Specify the default paper size setting. (Default: Varies depending on the area.)

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- 3 Select [Paper Size].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	
Utility	Paper Size	84×11	
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	
Printer Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
L	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	1/2		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Menory 100%		ОК

- 4 Press the desired button.
  - → When selecting other paper size, press [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ] to switch the page.

Job List	Specify the paper size to be used when it is not specified from the printer driver.	
Bookmark	Utility > Paper Settings > Paper Size	
Utility	A3 A4 A5	1 / 2
User Settings	A6 B4 B5	Ţ
Printer Settings	B6 12×18 11×17	
	81×14 81×11 75×18	
Paper Setting	5k-4%	
Paper Size	10/06/2008 15:28	ОК

5 Press [OK].

# 12.2.12 2-Sided Print

12

Configure the default 2-sided printing setting. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- **3** Press [2-Sided Print].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	
Utility	Paper Size	<b>8</b> ½×11	
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	
Printer Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	nper Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	Job Setting
Utility	Paper Size	8½×11	ON
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	OFF
₽rinter Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:34		ОК

# 12.2.13 Binding Position

Specify the default binding position for 2-sided printing. (Default: [Left Bind])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- **3** Press [Binding Position].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	
Utility	Paper Size	8½×11	
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	
Printer Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	₱ 1/2 ₽		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	Job Setting
Utility	Paper Size	8½×11	Top Bind
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	Left Bind
₽rinter Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	Right Bind
•	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:34		ОК

# 12.2.14 Staple

12

Configure the staple setting when the data to be printed has no staple setting information. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- 3 Press [Staple].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	nper Setting	
Utility	Paper Tray	Auto	
	Paper Size	8%×11	
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	
Printer Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	
	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:32 Memory 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Pa	per Setting	
	Paper Tray	Auto	Job Setting
Utility	Paper Size	8½×11	1 position
User Settings	2-Sided Print	OFF	2 Position
Printer Settings	Binding Position	Left Bind	OFF
	Staple	OFF	
Paper Setting	↑ 1/2 ↓		
	01/09/2010 16:34		ОК

Reference

• The Staple function is available only when the optional **Finisher** is installed.

#### 12.2.15 Punch

Configure the punch setting when the data to be printed has no punch setting information. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Punch].



4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.	
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Paper Setting	
()	Punch OFF	Job Setting
Utility	Banner Paper Tray Auto	2-Hole
User Settings		3-Hole
Printer Settings		
		OFF
Paper Setting	2/2	
	01/09/2010 16:35 Monory 100%	ОК

Reference

- The Punch function is available only when the **Punch Kit** is installed on the optional **Finisher**.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.

# 12.2.16 Banner Sheet Paper Tray

12

Specify the paper tray used to print banner pages. (Default: [Auto])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Paper Setting].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Banner Paper Tray].



4 Press the desired button.

Job List	Specify the banner paper tray to be used when it is not specified from the printer driver.
Bookmark	Utility > Paper Setting > Banner Paper Tray
Utility User Settings Printer Settings Paper Setting	Auto 1 Skii D U 1 Skii D 2 Skii D 3 A4 D 4 ± A4 D L 15kii D
Banner Paper Tray	08/26/2010 15:45

5 Press [OK].

#### 12.2.17 Font Settings

Configure the default font setting. (Default: Courier)

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PCL Settings].

Job List	Use the menu buttons (	or keypad to make a s	election.
Bookmark	Utility > User Setti	ngs > Printer Setting	5
Utility	1 Basic	Settings	6 Print Reports
User Settings	2 Paper	Setting	7 TIFF Inage Paper Setting
Printer Settings	3 PCL S	ettings	
rrinter settings	4 PS S	etting	
	5 XPS S	ettings	
	01/09/2010 16:30 Memory 100%		Close

**3** Press [Font Settings].

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > PCL Setting
Utility	1 Font Settings
User Settings	2 Symbol Set
Printer Settings	3 Font Size
	4 Line/Page
PCL Settings	5 CR/LF Mapping
	01/09/2010 16:36 Close

4 Press [Resident Font].

→ If downloaded fonts are available, [Download Font] can also be selected.

Job List	Specify the font to u	156.		
Bookmark	Utility > PCL Settin	ng > Font Setting		
			Current Font	
Utility	Desident Fort	Font Name		
User Settings	Resident Font			
Printer Settings		Font #	00	I I
		Font Size Unit	pitch	
PCL Settings				
Font Setting	01/09/2010 16:36 Memory 100%			ОК

- 5 Press the desired font name.
  - → Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press the desired font name.
  - → You can check the font number and the font size unit of the selected font.

Job List	Select the default font.	
Bookmark	Utility > Font Setting > Resident Font	
Utility	No. Typeface 0000 Courier	17 11
•	0001 CG Times 0002 CG Times Bold	
Printer Settings	0003 CG Times Italic	
₽CL Settings	0004 CG Times Bold Italic 0005 CG Omega	
	0006 CG Omega Bold 0007 CG Omega Italic	
Font Setting	Font #: 10000 Font Size Unit: Pit	Ch
Resident Font	01/09/2010 16:37 Menory 100%	ОК

6 Press [OK].

#### 12.2.18 Symbol Set

12

Configure the default font symbol set setting. (Default: Varies depending on the area.)

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PCL Settings].
- **3** Press [Symbol Set].

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
	Utility > Printer Settings > PCL Setting
Utility	1 Font Settings
User Settings	2 Symbol Set
	3 Font Size
Printer Settings	4 Line/Page
PCL Settings	5 CR/LF Mapping
	01/09/2010 16:36 Henory 100%

→ Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press the desired symbol set name.

Job List	Select default symbol set.	
Bookmark	Utility > PCL Settings > Symbol Set	
Utility User Settings Printer Settings	Symbol Set         PC-850 Multilingual         PC-852 Latin 2         PC-858 Multilingual         PC-8 Danish/Norw         PC-1004         PI Font         PS Math	3/ 5 1 V
PCL Settings	PS Text Roman-8	
	01/09/2010 16:37	ОК

5 Press [OK].

#### 12.2.19 Font Size

Specify the default font size value. (Default: [Scalable Font] - 12.00 Point/[Bitmap Font] - 10.00 Pitch)

- [Scalable Font]: Specify the font size in points.
- [Bitmap Font]: Specify the width of the bitmap font in pitches.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - $\rightarrow$  For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PCL Settings].
- 3 Press [Font Size].



- 4 Press the **C** key to clear the value, and then use the keypad to enter the size. (Scalable font: 4.00 Point 999.75 Point, Bitmap Font: 0.44 Pitch 99.00 Pitch)
  - → If a value outside of the allowable range is specified, the message "Input error" appears. Enter a number within the allowable range.

Job List	Select the to specify	font to be set as the default, and use the keypad the default size.
Bookmark	Utility >	PCL Settings > Font Size
Utility		
User Settings		12.00points         10.00 pitch           4.00 - 999.75         0.44 - 99.00
Printer Settings		Scalable Font Bitmap Font
PCL Settings		
Font Size	01/09/2010 Menory	16:37 100%

5 Press [OK].

The font size is set.

#### 12.2.20 Line/Page

12

Specify the number of lines per page when printing text. (Default: Varies depending on the area.)

- In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
   → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PCL Settings].
- 3 Press [Line/Page].

Job List Bookmark	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
DOOKIIAI K	Utility > Printer Settings > PCL Setting
Utility	1 Font Settings
User Settings	2 Symbol Set
↓ Printer Settings	3 Font Size
PCL Settings	5 CR/LF Mapping
	01/09/2010 16:36 Kenocy 1007

- 4 Press the **C** key to clear the value, and then use the keypad to enter the number of lines. (5 lines to 128 lines)
  - → If a value outside of the allowable range is specified, the message "Input error" appears. Enter a number within the allowable range.

Job List	Specify the number of lines per page when printing a test page.
Bookmark	Utility > PCL Settings > Line/Page
Utility	
User Settings	60 lines
Printer Settings	5 - 128
PCL Settings	
Line/Page	01/09/2010 16:37 Henory 100%

5 Press [OK].

The number of lines is set.

## 12.2.21 CR/LF Mapping

Specify the CR/LF substitution method when printing text data. (Default: [No])

- [Mode 1]: Select this option to substitute CR with CR-LF.
- [Mode 2]: Select this option to substitute LF with CR-LF.
- [Mode 3]: Select this option to substitute with CR-LF.
- [No]: Select this option not to perform substitution.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PCL Settings].
- 3 Press [CR/LF Mapping].

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > PCL Setting
Utility	1 Font Settings
User Settings	2 Symbol Set
• •	3 Font Size
Printer Settings	4 Line/Page
PCL Settings	5 CR/LF Mapping
	01/09/2010 16:36
	U1/U9/2010 16:36 Memory 100%

4 Select [Yes] or [No]. If [Yes] is selected, be sure to also press the button for the desired setting.

Job List Bookmark	Specify the CR/LF mode for printing text data.
	Utility > PCL Settings > CR/LF Mapping
	Yes No
Utility	
User Settings	Mode1 (CR->CR-LF LF=LF FF=FF) Mode2 (CR=CR LF->CR-LF FF->CR-FF)
Printer Settings	Hode3 (CR->CR-LF LF->CR-LF FF->CR-FF)
PCL Settings	
CR/LF Mapping	01/09/2010 16:37 Menory 1002

5 Press [OK].

#### 12.2.22 Print PS Errors

12

Specify whether to print the error message when an error occurs during PS rasterization. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [PS Setting].

Job List	Jse the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings > Printer Settings
Utility	1 Basic Settings 6 Print Reports
User Settings	2 Paper Setting 7 TIFF Image Paper Setting
Printer Settings	3 PCL Settings
	4 PS Setting
	5 XPS Settings
	01/09/2010 16:30

3 Press [Print PS Errors].



Job List Bookmark	Select job s	etting. Printer Settings > PS	Setting	
Utility User Settings Printer Settings		int PS Errors	OFF	Job Setting
PS Setting	01/09/2010 Memory	16:38 100%		ОК

# 12.2.23 Verify XPS Digital Signature

Specify whether to perform digital signature verification in XPS printing. When [ON] is specified for the signature verification, the document without a valid digital signature is not printed. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [XPS Settings].
  - → If an error is detected in the signature verification while [Print XPS Errors] is specified to print the information, the error information is printed. For details, refer to page 12-51.

Job List	Use the me	nu buttons or keypad to make	e a select	ion.	
Bookmark	Utility >	User Settings > Printer Se	ttings		I
Utility	1	Basic Settings	6	Print Reports	
User Settings	2	Paper Setting	7	TIFF Inage Paper Setting	
	3	PCL Settings			
Printer Settings	4	PS Setting			
	5	XPS Settings			
	01/09/2010 Memory	16:30 100%		Close	

3 Press [Verify XPS Digital Signature].

Job List	Select item	and enter setting.		
Bookmark Utility		rinter Settings > XPS § S Digital Signature	off	
User Settings Printer Settings XPS Setting				
	01/09/2010 Memory	16:38 100%		ОК

Job List	Select job s	setting.		
Bookmark Utility User Settings Printer Settings XPS Setting		rrinter Settings > XPS <mark>'S Digital Signature</mark>	: Setting OFF	Job Setting
	01/09/2010 Menory	16:38 100%		ОК

#### 12.2.24 Print Reports

12

Print reports. The following four types of reports can be output. The following describes the report output method taking the PCL font list output process as an example.

- [Configuration Page]: Select this option to output the list of settings of the machine.
- [Demo Page]: Select this option to output a test page.
- [PCL Font List]: Select this option to output the PCL font list.
- [PS Font List]: Select this option to output the PS font list.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - $\rightarrow$  For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Press [Print Reports].

Job List	se the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.	
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings > Printer Settings	
Utility	1   Basic Settings   6   Print Reports	
User Settings	2 Paper Setting 7 TIFF Image Paper Setting	
	3 PCL Settings	
Printer Settings	4 PS Setting	
	5 XPS Settings	
	1/09/2010 16:30 enory 100%	

Job List	Select the report to be outputted.
Bookmark	Utility > Printer Settings > Print Reports
Utility User Settings	Configuration Page Demo Page
Printer Settings  Print Reports	PCL Font List PS Font List
	01/09/2010 16:39 Konory 100%

4 Press the button of the desired paper tray, and then either 1-Sided or 2-Sided button.

Job List	Select &×11 or 1147 paper. Touch (Start) or press (Start) to begin printing. Utility > Print Reports > Configuration Page			
BUUKIIARK				
		Paper Tray	Simplex/Duplex	
Utility			1-Sided	
User Settings		2 A4 D	2-Sided	
Printer Settings		3 ⊫®×11 D		
Print Reports		4 =8×11 D L =8×11 D		
Configuration Page	10/06/2008 15:31 Menory 100%	Can	cel Start	

- 5 Press [Start] or the **Start** key to print the report.
  - → To stop operations, press [Cancel].

#### 12.2.25 TIFF Image Paper Setting

Select this option to configure how to determine the paper size when directly printing TIFF or JPEG image data. (Default: [Auto Paper Select])

Direct print is used to print documents using the direct print function of **PageScope Web Connection** or from external memory, or cellular phone/PDA.

- [Auto Paper Select]: For TIFF/JPEG (JFIF), select this option to calculate the size of the image based on its resolution and the number of pixels to print the image on paper that fits the image size. Select this option to print images on paper of the same size as the image. For JPEG (EXIF), an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Paper Setting] - [Paper Size]. An image is enlarged or reduced to fit the paper size.
   [Priority Paper Size]: When printing from a cellular phone or PDA an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified.
  - When printing from a cellular phone or PDA, an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in [User Settings] - [Cellular Phone/PDA Settings] - [Print] - [Paper]. When using direct printing from PageScope Web Connection or external memory, an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Paper Setting] - [Paper Size].

An image is enlarged or reduced to fit the paper size.

- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.

2 Press [TIFF Image Paper Setting].

12



**3** Press [Paper Selection].

Job List	Select item	and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > P	rinter Settings > T	IFF Image Paper Setting	
Utility User Settings User Settings User Settings Utility User Setting	Par	xer Selection	Auto Paper Select	
	01/09/2010 Memory	16:39 100%		ОК

4 Press the desired button.



## 12.2.26 Link File Error Notification

This function enables you to specify processing to be performed if the machine cannot access a link file when attempting to print an XHTML file from a cellular phone or PDA. (Default: [ON])

- [ON]: Prints a link file part in a black frame.
- [OFF]: Does not print a link file part.

Reference

- Cellular Phone/PDA Setting is displayed when the optional Local Interface Kit EK-605 is installed while [Bluetooth Setting] is enabled in this machine and [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is enabled in Administrator Settings For details, refer to page 12-56.
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
  - → [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is displayed in the 2/2 screen. Press [Forward →] to switch the screen.

Job List	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings
Utility	2/2 * ←Back figFa → #
User Settings	
	01/09/2010 16:40 Close Close

2 Press [Link File Error Notification].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings > Mobile	e/PDA Settings	
Utility	Link File Error Notification	Yes	
••••••	Proxy Server Use	No	
User Settings	Print		
Cellular Phone/ PDA Setting			
	01/09/2010 16:40 Memory 100%		ОК

12



#### 12.2.27 Use Proxy Server

This function enables you to specify whether the machine uses a proxy server to access a link file when printing an XHTML file from a cellular phone or PDA. (Default: [OFF])

- [ON]: Uses a proxy server.
- [OFF]: Does not use a proxy server.

Reference

- Cellular Phone/PDA Setting is displayed when the optional **Local Interface Kit EK-605** is installed while [Bluetooth Setting] is enabled in this machine and [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is enabled in Administrator Settings For details, refer to page 12-56.
- When using a proxy server for connection, select [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [Web-DAV Settings] - [WebDAV Client Settings] - [Proxy Server Address] to register the desired proxy server. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
  - → [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is displayed in the 2/2 screen. Press [Forward →] to switch the screen.



2 Press [Proxy Server Use].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark Utility User Settings Cellular Phone/ PDA Setting	Utility > User Settings > Mobile/ Link File Error Notification Proxy Server Use Print	PDA Settings Yes No	
	01/09/2010 16:40		ОК

**3** Press the desired button.

Job List	Select item and enter	setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > User Settin	ngs > Mobile/PDA Set	tings	
Utility	Link File Error Not		Yes (	Job Setting
User Settings	Print		(	OFF
Cellular Phone/ PDA Setting				
	01/09/2010 16:40 Memory 100%			ОК

#### 12.2.28 Print

Specify print conditions to print a document from a cellular phone or PDA. (Default: [1-Sided], [Finishing] - None)

- Basic Print: Select 1-Sided or 2-Sided.
- Basic Paper: Select the printing paper size if the sent data does not contain paper size information.
- Basic Finishing: Specify Fold/Bind, Staple, or Punch.
- Application Margin: Select the margin position.
- Application Stamp/Composition: Composes the following contents when printing.

[Date/Time]	The date and time of printing are printed on the pages.
[Page Number]	A page number is printed on all pages of a document.
[Stamp]	A preset character string such as "URGENT" is printed on pages.
[Copy Security]	A pattern to prevent unauthorized copying is printed on pages. [Copy Protect]: Prints hidden text. [Copy Guard]: Prints a Copy Guard pattern. [Password Copy]: Prints a password for Password Copy.
[Stamp Repeat]	Text or an image is repeatedly printed on all pages.

#### Reference

12

- Cellular Phone/PDA Setting is displayed when the optional Local Interface Kit EK-605 is installed while [Bluetooth Setting] is enabled in this machine and [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is enabled in Administrator Settings For details, refer to page 12-56.
- The contents of [TIFF Image Paper Setting] also affect the paper size output when printing from a cellular phone or PDA. For details, refer to page 12-29.
- [Copy Guard] or [Password Copy] is displayed when the optional Security Kit SC-507 is installed. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
  - → [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is displayed in the 2/2 screen. Press [Forward →] to switch the screen.



2 Press [Print].

Job List	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings > Mobile	/PDA Settings	
Utility	Link File Error Notification	Yes	
+	Proxy Server Use	No	
User Settings	Print		
Cellular Phone/ PDA Setting			
	01/09/2010 16:40 Memory 100%		ОК

3 Press the desired button.



## 12.2.29 Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification (Half-Fold Specification)

Specify the unit of folding when [Half-Fold] or [Tri-Fold] is specified for the [Fold] function in the printer driver and multiple pages are printed. You can select whether to fold pages collectively for each job or by sheet. (Default: Batch)

- One Sheet at a Time: Half-fold or tri-fold page by page.
- Batch: Half-fold or tri-fold all pages together for a job. However, if the number of original pages exceeds the folding capacity of this machine, the [Fold] function setting is cancelled automatically, and the sheets are printed without being folded.

Reference

- [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] is displayed only when the **Saddle Kit SD-508** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-526**. [Half-Fold Specification] is displayed only when the **Saddle Kit SD-509** is installed on the optional **Finisher FS-527**.
- When [Booklet] is selected simultaneously with [Half-Fold], all pages are half-folded together even if [One Sheet at a Time] is selected.
- To change the folding capacity, contact your service representative. Half-folding capacity setting: 1-3 (default: 3), Tri-folding capacity setting: 1-3 (default: 1)
- 1 In the User Settings screen, press [Copier Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the User Settings screen, refer to page 12-3.
- 2 Switch the page by pressing [ ↑ ] or [ ↓ ], and then press [Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specification] (or [Half-Fold Specification]).

Job List	Select item and enter setting.
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings> Copier Settings
User Settings Copier Settings	Half-Fold/Specification Multiple Sheets
	10/15/2009 14:57 Menory 1007. OK

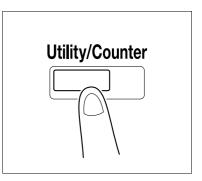
3 Press the desired button.

Job List	Select job setting.	
Bookmark	Utility > User Settings> Copier Settings	
		Job Setting
Utility		One Sheet at a Time
User Settings		Multiple Sheets
Copier Settings	WP1+Fold Specification Multiple Sheets	
	<b>↑</b> 3/4 <b>↓</b>	
		ОК

# 12.3 Basic operations in Administrator Settings

## 12.3.1 Displaying the Administrator Settings screen

**1** Press the **Utility/Counter** key.



2 Press [Administrator Settings].

Job List Meter Count	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection. Utility					
Meter Count Total 4	1     Reproduct Ver Box       6     Banner Printing       2     User Settings					
Black 4	Administrator Settings     B Device Information     Check Consumable Life					
Check Details	01/09/2010 16:29 Close					

- 3 Enter the password, and then press [OK].
  - → For details on setting or changing the password, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

Use the keyboard or keypad to type in the Administrator Password. Press ICI to clear the entered Administrator Password.
Utility > Administrator Settings
XXXXXXXX
q w e r t y u i o p E l X
a s d f g h j k l ; •
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
Space
01/09/2010 16:42 Menory 100%

The Administrator Settings screen appears.



- → It can also be selected by pressing the key in the keypad of the number indicated on the desired button. For [Administrator Settings], press the 3 key on the keypad.
- → To finish configuring the Utility mode settings, press the Utility/Counter key. You can also exit the Utility screen by pressing [Close] until either the Copy, Fax/Scan or User Box screen appears.
- → To return through the hierarchy of the Utility menu, press [Close] until the desired screen appears. Alternatively, press an item in the upper hierarchy in the sub-menu area to return to the item.

## 12.4 Administrator Settings

12

## 12.4.1 Print/Fax Output Setting

Specify the timing for printing; to print data when it is received, after the reception is completed, or simultaneously as it is being received.

This setting can be configured separately between for printer and for fax. (Default: [Print] - [Page Print], [Fax] - [Batch Print])

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [Output Settings].
- 3 In the Output Settings screen, press [Print/Fax Output Setting].

	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > System Settings > Output Settings
Utility Administrator Settings	1 Print/Fax Output Settings 2 Output Tray Settings
Uutput Settings	4 Shift Output Each Job 01/09/2010 16:43 Menory 100%

The Print/Fax Output Setting screen appears.

- 4 Press [Print] or [Fax].
- 5 Press the desired button.



The timing for printing data is set.

→ If Batch Print is selected, printing starts after all the data is received. If Page Print is selected, printing starts when the data for the first page is received.

Reference

- If the [Administrator Security Levels] is set to [Level 2], this setting item can be specified in the User Settings as well. Press [User Settings] - [System Settings] - [Output Settings] - [Print/Fax Output Settings] to display the Print/Fax Output Setting screen.
- For details on the administrator security levels, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

## 12.4.2 Output Tray Settings

Configure the default output tray settings. (Default: [Print] - [Tray 2])

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - $\rightarrow$  For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [Output Settings].
- 3 In the Output Settings screen, press [Output Tray Settings].



The Output Tray Settings screen appears.

4 Press the desired button.

	The default setting	for each function can b	e specified.	
Bookmark	Administrator Setti	ngs > Output Settings >	Output Tray Settings	
Utility Administrator Settings	2	Copy Tray 1 Tray 2	Print. Tray 1 Tray 2	
System Settings		Print Reports Tray 1	Fax	
Output Settings		Tray 2	Tray 2	
Output Tray Settings	10/06/2008 15:32 Memory 100%			OK

5 Press [OK].

The output tray is set.

## 12.4.3 Delete Secure Print Documents

12

This function deletes all the secure print documents saved.

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [User Box Settings].
- 3 In the User Box Settings screen, press [Delete Secure Print Documents].



4 To delete the secure print documents, press [Yes].

Bookmark		Are you	sure yo	ou want	to delete	e all secur	e print docu	ments?
Utility								
Administrator Settings								
System Settings								
	01/09/201	0 16:4		Yes			No	ОК

5 Press [OK].

Specify the length of time for deleting a secure document after it is saved. (Default: [1 day])

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [User Box Settings].
- 3 In the User Box Settings screen, press [Auto Delete Secure Document].



- 4 Press the desired button.
  - → To specify the time manually, press [Time] and then enter the time from the keypad.

	Specify the ti	me you wish to d	elete Secure P	Print Documents.	
Bookmark	Administrator	Setting > User	Box Setting >	Auto Delete Secure	e Document
(					
Utility		1 day		2 days	)
Administrator Settings		3 days		7 days	)
System Settings		30 days			
		Time	:	:00	
User Box Settings				Save	)
Auto Delete Secure Document		6:46			ОК
<u> </u>	Memory 1	00%			

5 Press [OK].

## 12.4.5 ID & Print Delete Time

12

Specify the length of time for deleting an ID & print document after it is saved. (Default: [1 day]) Reference

- [ID & Print Delete Time] is displayed when the user authentication is enabled on the machine.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [User Box Settings].
- 3 In the User Box Settings screen, press [ID & Print Delete Time].



- 4 Press the desired button.
  - → To specify the time manually, press [Time] and then enter the time from the keypad.



5 Press [OK].

## 12.4.6 ID & Print Delete after Print Setting

Specify whether to delete the ID & Print document after it is printed. (Default: [Confirm with User])

- [Confirm with User]: Select this option to display the screen where the user can select whether the document printed from the ID & Print User Box is deleted after it is printed. Select this option if you want to leave the document.
- [Always Delete]: Select this option to delete the document after printing. Deletion is not confirmed with user.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, press [User Box Settings].
- 3 In the User Box Settings screen, press [ID & Print Delete after Print Setting].

	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > System Settings > User Box Settings
Utility	1 Delete Unused User Box 6 Document Hold Setting
Administrator Settings	2 Printe Secureto 7 Function Settings
System Settings	3 Auto Delete Secure Document 8 Allow/Restrict User Box
	4 Encrypted PDF Delete Time 9 Beister After Print Setting
User Box Settings	5 ID & Print Delete Time 0 Setting Delete Time
	01/09/2010 16:45 kenory 100%

4 Press the desired button.



5 Press [OK].

## 12.4.7 Skip Job Operation Settings

Specify whether to start processing for the next job when the current job stops due to running out of paper in the paper tray. (Default: [Yes])

- [Yes]: Select this option to give precedence to processing of other job while maintaining the stopped job in the queued state. The queued job is processed after the problem is solved. This function is helpful because it prevents other jobs from queuing for simple reasons such as paper in a specific paper tray running out.
- [No]: If a single job is stopped, all other jobs are queued for processing as well. All jobs are processed after the problem is solved.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Settings screen, switch the page by pressing [  $\leftarrow$  ] or [  $\rightarrow$  ], and then press [Skip Job Operation Settings].

	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > System Settings	For-
Utility Administrator Settings System Settings	6     Perfering Perfering       2     Stamp Settings       3     Blank Page Print Settings       4     Application Key Settings	t Position
	5 Skip Job Operation Settings	Close

- 3 Press [Fax] or [Other than Fax].
- 4 Press the desired button.



### 12.4.8 ID & Print Settings

Specify whether to use the ID & Print function on the machine that performs user authentication or account track. (Default: [OFF])

- ID & Print [ON]: Select this option to process all print jobs requested from a registered user as ID & Print jobs and save them in [ID & Print User Box] even if [ID & Print] is not enabled on the printer driver.
- ID & Print [OFF]: Select this option to process jobs as ID & Print jobs only when [ID & Print] is enabled on the printer driver. Among print jobs requested from a registered user, [Print] jobs, for which [ID & Print] is not enabled on the printer driver, are output without being processed as ID & Print jobs.
- Public User [Print Immediately]: Select this option to output the public user jobs or jobs without user authentication information without saving.
- Public User [Save]: Select this option to process the public user jobs or jobs without user authentication information as ID & Print jobs and save them in the [ID & Print User Box].

### Reference

- A public user job is printed or saved when public user printing is enabled.
- A user-unauthorized job is printed or saved when [Print without Authentication] is enabled.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [User Authentication/Account Track].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the User Authentication/Account Track screen, press [User Authentication Settings].
- 3 In the User Authentication Settings screen, press [Administrative Setting].



4 In the Administrative Settings screen, press [ID & Print Settings].

	Select item and enter setting.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > User Auth. Settings > Administrative Settings
Utility	User Name List OFF
↓J	Default Function Permission
Administrator Settings	ID & Print Settings
User Authentication/ Account Track	Default Operation Selection Begin Printing
User Auth. Settings	
Administrative Settings	01/09/2010 16:48 Wenory 100%

5 Specify [ID&Print] and [Public User].

Bookmark	Specify ID & Print settings.	
BUUKIIIAT K	Administrator Settings > Administrative	e Settings > ID & Print Settings
	ID & Print	Public User
Utility Administrator Settings	ON	Print Innediately
User Auth. Settings Administrative Settings	OFF	Save
ID & Print Settings	01/09/2010 16:48 Menory 100%	ОК

6 Press [OK].

12

## 12.4.9 ID & Print Operation Settings

Specify the printing method when using the ID & Print function on an optional **Authentication Unit**. (Default: [Print All Jobs])

- [Print All Jobs]: Select this option to print all the documents authenticated at one setting when multiple documents are saved in the ID & Print User Box.
- [Print Each Job]: Select this option to print a document for each authentication when multiple documents are saved in the ID & Print User Box.

Reference

- The ID & Print Operation Settings appears on the screen only when an optional **Authentication Unit** is installed.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [User Authentication/Account Track].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the User Authentication/Account Track screen, press [User Authentication Settings].
- 3 In the User Authentication Settings screen, press [Administrative Setting].

	Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > User Auth./Account Track > User Auth. Settings
Utility	1 <u>Administrative</u>
Administrator Settings	2 User Registration
User Authentication/ Account Track	3 User Counter
+	
User Auth. Settings	
	01/09/2010 16:47 Menory 1002

4 In the Administrative Settings screen, press [ID & Print Operation Settings].

5 Press the desired button.



### 12.4.10 Default Operation Selection

Configure the default setting of the operation to be performed after authentication has been completed on the authentication unit (success in login) while this machine is holding ID & print jobs. (Default: [Begin Print-ing])

- [Begin Printing]: Select this option to print an ID & print job simultaneously with authentication. This option is convenient when there are many ID & print users.
   However, when using the copy or scan function on the control panel, select [Print & Access] or [Access] before authentication.
- [Print & Access]: Select this option to print an ID & print job simultaneously with authentication, and log in to the basic page. When using only the ID & print function, select [Begin Printing] before authentication.
- [Access]: Click this option to log in to the basic page. ID & print jobs are not executed. This option is convenient when there are few ID & print users. When using only the ID & Print function, select [Begin Printing] before authentication.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [User Authentication/Account Track].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the User Authentication/Account Track screen, press [User Authentication Settings].
- 3 In the User Authentication Settings screen, press [Administrative Setting].



4 In the Administrative Setting screen, press [Default Operation Selection].

5 Press the desired button.



## 12.4.11 Print without Authentication

Specify whether to allow the print jobs without authentication specified when the machine is performing user authentication or account track. (Default: [Restrict])

- [Allow]: Select this option to allow the print jobs to be printed when an ID and password for user authentication or an account name and password for account track are not specified. Printing is counted as a public job.
- [Restrict]: Select this option not to allow the print jobs to be printed when an ID and password for user authentication or an account name and password for account track are not specified.

Reference

- If the print jobs without authentication specified are permitted to be printed, printing can be performed on this machine performing user authentication or account track, even if user authentication or account track is not specified in the printer driver. Select Restrict if you want to control usage for the counter management or security reasons.
- A print job without authentication specified means a job that performed printing without enabling User Authentication or Account Track in the printer driver. In Windows, it means a job for which User Authentication or Account Track is set to [Disable] in [Configure] tab - [Device Option] in the Properties window. In Macintosh OS X, it means a job for which the User Authentication or Account Track check box is not selected in the [Output Method] window.

The setting in the [Configure] tab - [Device Option] of the Windows printer driver is specified automatically if [Configure] tab - [Obtain Settings...] is set to [Auto], and cannot be changed. For details on [Auto], refer to page 8-5.

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [User Authentication/Account Track].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the User Authentication/Account Track screen, press [Print without Authentication].
- **3** Press the desired button.

	Touch [Allow	n to allow printing without authentication.
Bookmark	Administrat	or Settings > User/Account > Print without Authentication
Utility Administrator Settings User User Print vithout Authentication		Allow Restrict
	01/09/2010 Memory	16:49

4 Press [OK].

The print without authentication is specified.

## 12.4.12 I/F timeout setting

Specify the time until a communication timeout occurs for each of the USB or network interface. (Default: 60 sec.)

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the Printer Settings screen, press the interface to specify.

	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe		
Utility	USB Timeout	60 sec.	
	Network Timeout	60 Sec.	
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	
	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
Printer Settings	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Memory 100%		ОК

- **3** Press the **C** key to clear the value, and then use the keypad to enter the time. (10 to 1,000 sec.)
  - → If a value outside of the allowable range is specified, the message "Input error" appears. Enter a number within the allowable range.

	Use the keypad to enter the time	out period.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe	r Settings	
Utility	USB Timeout	60 Sec.	Job Setting
+	Network Timeout	60 Sec.	60 sec. 10 - 1000
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	
Printer Settings	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49		ОК

The time until a communication timeout occurs is set.

Specify whether to print the error message when an error occurs during XPS printing. (Default: [No])

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 Press [Print XPS Errors].

	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe	r Settings	
Utility	USB Timeout	60 sec.	
	Network Timeout	60 sec.	
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	
₽rinter Settings	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Memory 100%		ОК

**3** Press the desired button.

	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe	er Settings	
	USB Timeout	60 sec.	Job Setting
Utility	Network Timeout	60 Sec.	Yes
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	No
Printer Settings	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Motory 1007		ОК

## 12.4.14 PSWC Direct Print

12

Specify whether to allow the direct print from PageScope Web Connection. (Default: [Yes])

- [Yes]: Select this option to allow direct print from PageScope Web Connection.
- [No]: Select this option not to allow direct print from PageScope Web Connection.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 Press [PSWC Direct Print].

	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe	r Settings	
Utility	USB Timeout	60 SeC.	
•	Network Timeout	60 sec.	
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	
	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
Printer Settings	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Memory 100%		ОК

**3** Press the desired button.

	Select job setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Print	er Settings	
[ []	USB Timeout	60 sec.	Job Setting
Utility	Network Timeout	60 sec.	Yes
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	No
Printer Settings	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Menory 100%		ОК

## 12.4.15 Assign Account to Acquire Device Info

Specify whether this machine requests the password from the Windows printer driver when the Windows printer driver acquires device information, for example, which options are installed in this machine. (Default: [No])

- [No]: Does not request the password.
- [Yes]: Requests the password. Press [Password], and enter the password. For the printer driver, also enter the password specified in this machine. If the password is invalid, you cannot acquire device information.

Reference

- Specify the password using up to eight alphanumeric characters.
- If a password is specified in [Assign Account to Acquire Device Info], enter the same value in [Enter Password to acquire Device Information] of the printer driver. For details, refer to page 8-5.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Printer Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 Press [Assign Account to Acquire Device Info].

	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Printe	r Settings	
Utility	USB Timeout	60 sec.	
•	Network Tineout	60 Sec.	
Administrator Settings	Print XPS Errors	Yes	
▶ Printer Settings	PSWC Direct Print	Yes	
Printer Settings	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	No	
	01/09/2010 16:49 Memory 100%		ОК

- 3 Press the desired button.
  - → To specify a password, select [Yes].



4 When specifying a password, continuously press [Password].

- 5 Enter the password, and then press [OK].
  - → The password is specified.

Use the keyboard or keypad to type in the password.
Administrator Settings > Assign Account to Acquire Device Information > Password
*******
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = •
a 5 d f 9 h j k 1 :
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
01/09/2010 16:50 Menory 100%

## 12.4.16 Configuring Authentication under OpenAPI Settings

When user authentication is performed or when acquiring the device information with the **PageScope Authentication Manager**, set the Authentication setting of the OpenAPI Setting screen of the machine to [OFF]. (Default: [OFF])

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Connection].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Connection screen, press [OpenAPI Settings].
- 3 In the OpenAPI Settings screen, press [Authentication].

	Specify setting for selected item.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > System Connection > OpenAPI Settings
Utility	Access Setting Allow
	SSL/Port Settings
Administrator Settings	Authentication OFF
System Connection	
+	
OpenAPI Settings	
	01/09/2010 16:51 Menory 100%

4 Set [Authentication] to [OFF].

	Select wheth	er or not aut	thentication is t	o be used with OpenAf	PI.
Bookmark	[Administrate	au Oattingo )	OnenADI Cetting	o \ Authoutiontion	
		Y		s > Authentication	_
Utility			OFF		
Administrator Settings			Login Name		
System Connection					
•			Password		
OpenAPI Settings					
+					
Authentication	01/09/2010 Memory	16:51			ОК

5 Press [OK].

The authentication settings are configured.

## 12.4.17 Configuring the cellular phone or PDA settings

You can specify whether to allow printing from a cellular phone or PDA and saving in a User Box. (Default: [Restrict])

- [Allow]: Allow printing from a cellular phone or PDA, and saving in a User Box.
- [Restrict]: Not allow printing from a cellular phone or PDA, or saving in a User Box.

Reference

- [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] is displayed when the optional **Local Interface Kit EK-605** is installed while [Bluetooth Setting] is enabled in this machine. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator]. To enable a Bluetooth communication, contact your service representative in advance.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [System Connection].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the System Connection screen, press [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting].
- **3** Press the desired button.

Bookmark	The Cellular	Phone/PDA Use Pe	mission sett:	ing is complete.	
	Administrat	or Setting > Syst	em Connection	> Cellular Phone/PDA	Setting
Utility Administrator Settings System Connection Cellular Phone/ PDA Setting		A110W		Restrict	
	01/09/2010 Menory	16:51 100%			ОК

4 Press [OK].

The Mobile/PDA Settings is specified.

Specify whether to allow or prohibit data capturing of a print job. (Default: [Allow])

Reference

- For details on capturing data of a print job, contact your service representative.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Security Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the Security Settings screen, press [Security Details].
- 3 In the Security Details screen, press [Print Data Capture].
- 4 Press the desired button.

Declaration	Specify setting for selected item.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings> Security Settings> Security D	etails
	Password Rules Invalid	Job Setting
Utility	Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error Mode 1	Allow
Administrator Settings	Confidential Document Mode 1	Restrict
↓ Security	Manual Destination Input Allow All	
Settings	Print Data Capture Allow	
Security Details	<b>↑</b> 1/4 <b>↓</b>	
	01/09/2010 16:52 Menory 100%	ОК

Whether to allow or prohibit data capturing of a print job is specified.

→ For details, contact your service representative.

### 12.4.19 Secure Print Only

Specify whether the printing from the computer should be limited only to the security document. (Default: [No])

Whenever printing is done from the printer driver, the data must be transmitted using the secure printing. Because this setting requires ID/password for every print job, your job is protected from intercepting by a third party.

- [Yes]: Select this option to limit the printing only to the secure documents.
- [No]: Select this option not to limit the printing to the secure documents.

Reference

- When you print a document on the machine with [Secure Print Only] set to [Yes], specify [Secure Print Only] on the printer driver so that only the [Secure Print] jobs are transmitted.
- If a normal print job is sent to the machine where [Secure Print Only] is set to [Yes], the print job is deleted.

### Reference

For details on secure printing, refer to page 11-6.

- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Security Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the Security Settings screen, press [Security Details].
- 3 Switch the page by pressing [  $\uparrow$  ] or [  $\downarrow$  ], and then press [Secure Print Only].
- 4 Press the desired button.

	Specify setting for selected item.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings> Security Settings> Security De	tails
Utility	Initialize	Job Setting
•	Job History Thumbnail Display OFF	Yes
Administrator Settings	Secure Print Only No	No
Security Settings		
Security Details	<b>₹</b> 3/4 <b>↓</b>	
	01/09/2010 16:52 Menory 100%	ОК

Whether the printing should be limited to security documents is specified.



## 12.4.20 Driver Password Encryption Setting

For the common encryption key to be added to print jobs, specify whether to use the factory default setting or to change to a user-defined encryption passphrase. (Default: [Use Factory Default])

- [User-Defined]: Specify an encryption passphrase. Enter an encryption passphrase of 20 characters.
- [Use Factory Default]: Select this option to use the encryption passphrase <a preset encryption key (common key) that is not exposed> preset at shipping.

Reference

- An encryption passphrase must be specified using 20 characters.
- User, account, and secure document passwords are encrypted by the common encryption key.
- When [User-Defined] is selected for the encryption passphrase, select the check box for the encryption passphrase in the printer driver to enable it, and then enter the same value. If different values are used for the encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver, the machine cannot decrypt the encrypted user password, account password or secure document password, and printing cannot be performed. For details, refer to page 11-33.
- When OpenAPI is used and SSL is enabled, it is possible for the machine to obtain the common encryption key provided that the device information of the printer driver can be obtained automatically.
- 1 In the Administrator Settings screen, press [Security Settings].
  - → For details on displaying the Administrator Settings screen, refer to page 12-36.
- 2 In the Security Settings screen, press [Driver Password Encryption Setting].
- **3** Press the desired button.

	To change the encryption passphrase of the printer driver, select (User Specified), and then set the encryption passphrase.
Bookmark	Administrator setting > Security Settings
Utility Administrator Settings Security Settings Priver Pageword Setting	Use Factory Default
	01/09/2010 16:20 Menory 100%

## Reference

For details on selecting [User-Defined] for the encryption passphrase, refer to page 11-33.

# 13 PageScope Web Connection

# 13.1 Using PageScope Web Connection

**PageScope Web Connection** is a device control utility provided by the HTTP server built in the printer controller. Using a Web browser on a computer connected to the network, you can change machine settings and check the status of the machine. Using this utility, you can configure some settings, which are to be handled in the control panel of this machine, through your computer, and also smoothly enter characters.

## 13.1.1 Operating environment

### **Operating environment**

Network	Ethernet (TCP/IP)
Applications on compu- ter	<ul> <li>Web browser:</li> <li><for 2003="" 2008="" 7="" r2="" server="" vista="" windows="" xp=""></for></li> <li>Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6/7/8 (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li><for 9.x="" macintosh="" macos="" x=""></for></li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li><for 9.x="" macintosh="" macos="" x=""></for></li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li><for linux=""></for></li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li><for linux=""></for></li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li><plug-in as="" display="" flash="" format.<="" later="" li="" or="" required="" select="" the="" to="" ver.7.0=""> <li>Plug-in Ver.9.0 or later required to use the Data Management Utility (font/macro data management).</li> </plug-in></li></ul>

## 13.1.2 Accessing PageScope Web Connection

- ✓ Start the Web browser to access **PageScope Web Connection**.
- ✓ If User Authentication is enabled, enter the user name and password. For details, refer to page 13-9.
- ✓ For details on setting the IP address of this machine, refer to [User's Guide Network Administrator].
- ✔ PageScope Web Connection has two view modes: Flash and HTML. For details, refer to page 13-8.
- 1 Start the Web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the machine in the URL field, and then press [Enter].

http://<IP address of the machine>/

Example: When the IP address of this machine is 192.168.1.20:

http://192.168.1.20/

When IPv6 is set to [ON] while a browser other than Internet Explorer 6 is used:

- Enter the IPv6 address enclosed in brackets [] to access PageScope Web Connection.
- http://[IPv6 address of this machine]/

Example: When the IPv6 address of this machine is fe80::220:6bff:fe10:2f16:

- http://[fe80::220:6bff:fe10:2f16]/
- If IPv6 is set to [ON] while Internet Explorer is used, add "fe80::220:6bff:fe10:2f IPv6\_MFP\_1" to the hosts file in advance, and specify the address with the host name.

The main menu or login page appears.

### 13.1.3 Web browser cache

The Web browser has the cache function; therefore, the latest information may not be shown in the page displayed using **PageScope Web Connection**. Using the cache function may result in an operation failure. When using **PageScope Web Connection**, disable the cache function on the Web browser.

Reference

- Some Web browser versions may provide different menus and item names. For details, refer to the Help for the Web browser.
- With the cache function enabled, timeout occurs in the administrator mode, and after that, how many time you try to access, just timeout recurs. It results in the control panel of this machine being locked, and you cannot handle the control panel. In this case, turn the main power off, and then turn it on again. To avoid this problem, disable the cache function.

### For Internet Explorer

- 1 Select [Internet Options] in the [Tools] menu.
- 2 In the [General] tab, select [Temporary Internet files] [Settings].
- 3 Select [Every visit to the page], and click [OK].

### For Netscape Navigator

- 1 Select [Preferences] in the [Edit] menu.
- 2 In [Category] on the left, select [Advanced] [Cache].
- 3 In [Document in cache is compared to document on network], select [Every time].

### For Mozilla Firefox

- **1** Select [Options] in the [Tools] menu.
- 2 Select [Privacy], and then click [Settings] in the Private Data section.
- **3** Select the [Cache] check box under [Private Data] select the [Clear private data when closing Firefox] check box under [Settings], and then click [OK].

### 13.1.4 Online help function

After logging in to **PageScope Web Connection**, click ?; you can display the online help for the currently configured function.

Reference

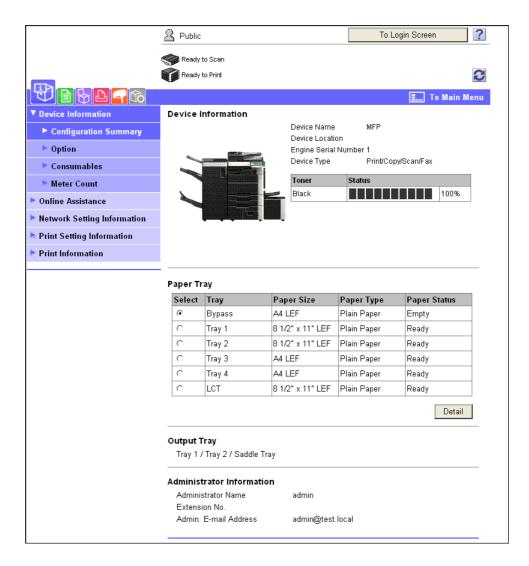
To display the online help, connect your computer to the Internet.

### 13.2.1 Login and logout flows

Accessing with **PageScope Web Connection** displays the login page when User Authentication or Account Track is enabled, and displays the login page in the public user mode when User Authentication or Account Track is not enabled. When re-logging in to this machine as a different user or as an administrator, log out once, and log in again.

### When user authentication or account track is not enabled

You are automatically logged in as a public user.



To log in as an administrator, log out once.



Login as an administrator again.

	Web Connection
Language	OS Language (OS Language)
Login	C Public User
	© Administrator
View Mode	ି Flash ୧ HTML
	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.
User Assist	I Display dialog box in case of warning. Login
	g-up Data Management Utility
~	Player is required to use the Data Management Utility.
	nage Copy Protect Data
(*1) Ca	nage Font/Macro (*1) in only run on Windows Internet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 and environments.

## When User Authentication or Account Track is enabled

If **PageScope Authentication Manager** is used for authentication, ask your server administrator about the login procedure.

The User Authentication or Account Track page appears. Enter the required items to log in.

Language	OS Language (OS Lar	nguage) 🔽
Login	C Public User	
	Registered User	
	User Name	
	Password	
	C Administrator	
View Mode	Flash	C HTML
	Flash Player is nece	ssary to see in Flash form. FLASH PLAYER
User Assist	I Display dialog bo	x in case of warning.
01 1701 138 0 0004 ( <del>-</del> 1869	up Data Management U	<b>tility</b> Data Management Utility.
	e Copy Protect Data	
	e Stamp Data	
	e Font/Macro (*1)	
		et Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 an

To log in as a different user or as an administrator, log out once.

13

	again.

Language	OS Language (OS Language)
Login	⊂ Public User
	User Name
	Password
	C Administrator
View Mode	
	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.
User Assist	P Display dialog box in case of warning.
Starting-u	ıp Data Management Utility
Flash Play	er is required to use the Data Management Utility.
Manag	e Copy Protect Data
Manag	e Stamp Data
Manag	e Font/Macro (*1)
(*1) Can o above env	nly run on Windows Internet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 a

### 13.2.2 Logout

Click [Logout] or [To Login Screen] at the upper right of the window. A logout confirmation page appears. Click [OK] to return to the login page.

Reference

- The login page that appears differs depending on whether Authentication is enabled in this machine.
- When logged in as a public user, [To Login Screen] appears. When logged in as a registered user or an administrator, [Logout] appears.
- If timeout occurred because no operation was performed for the specified period during login or if authentication setting was changed using the control panel while logging in to the user mode, you will automatically log out of the mode.
- For details on how to specify the timeout period of the user or administrator modes, refer to page 13-22.

	A Public		To Login Screen	?
	Ready to Scan			Ø
			🚛 To Main	Menu
Device Information	Logout			
Configuration Summary	User Name	Public		
► Option	Are you sure you want to logout of Public User and go to the login screen?			
► Consumables				
Meter Count				
			OK Canb	
Online Assistance			OK Canc	ы
<ul> <li>Online Assistance</li> <li>Function Permission Information</li> </ul>			. OK Cano	ы
Function Permission			OK Cano	H
Function Permission Information			OK Cano	н

## 13.2.3 Login

**PageScope Web Connection** provides the user or administrator mode depending on how to log in. If necessary, you can log in to the user mode as an administrator or User Box administrator depending on user authentication or User Box administrator setting.

Reference

- You can log in as a User Box administrator when the User Box administrator is enabled using the control panel. For details on the User Box administrator settings, permissions and password settings, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].
- When logged in to the user mode as an administrator, jobs that could not be deleted in the administrator mode can be deleted.
- In the login page, select the desired Data Management Utility. For details on Data Management Utility, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].

### Login options

You can select items as required when logging in.

Item	Description
[Language]	Select the display language.
[View Mode]	<ul> <li>Select Flash or HTML.</li> <li>If the screen reader software is used, we recommend selecting [HTML] as the view mode.</li> <li>In an IPv6 environment, select [HTML].</li> <li>Flash Player is required when selecting [Flash].</li> </ul>
[User Assist]	Select the [Display dialog box in case of warning.] check box to display the dialog box when a warning has occurred or during operation after login.

### Reference

- If [Flash] is selected in [View Mode], the following items are displayed using Flash.
- Status icons and messages
- Status of [Paper Tray] in [Information] [Device Information]
- Page display of [Job]

### Logging in as a public user

If user authentication is not enabled on the machine, you will be logging in as a public user. In the login page, select [Public User Access], and click [Login].

PAGE SCOPE	Web Connection		
Language	OS Language (OS Language)		
Login	Public User     ■		
	C Administrator		
View Mode	ি Flash ে HTML		
	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.		
User Assist	✓ Display dialog box in case of warning. Login		
•	p Data Management Utility		
Flash Player is required to use the Data Management Utility.			
	e Stamp Data		
<b>⊴⊡</b> Manage	e Font/Macro (*1)		
(*1) Can or above envi	nly run on Windows Internet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 and ronments.		

## Logging in as a registered user

Specify the registered user name and password to log in when User Authentication is enabled in this machine.

 $\rightarrow$  In the login page, enter the user name and the password, and click [Login].

0.2-002.02/06/06/06			
Language	OS Language (OS	S Language) 🛛 🚩	
Login	C Public User		
		ser	
	User Name		
	Password		
	C Administrator		
View Mod	e © Flash	C HTML	
	Flash Player is no	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.	
User Ass	st 🔽 Display dialog	☞ Display dialog box in case of warning.	
	ting-up Data Managemen		
		he Data Management Utility.	
	Ianage Copy Protect Data		
	lanage Stamp Data		
	lanage Font/Macro (*1)	ternet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 and	

#### Reference

- If Account Track is enabled, also enter the account name and password.
- To select a user name from a list, click [User List].
- If External Server Authentication is enabled, select a server.
- To log in to the user mode as an administrator, select [Administrator] [Administrator (User Mode)], and enter the administrator password.
- If [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] in Administrator Settings is set to [Mode 2] and a user enters an incorrect password the specified number of times, that user is locked out and can no longer use the printer. Contact your administrator to cancel operation restrictions.
- [User List] is available only when [User Name List] is set to [ON]. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

### Logging in to the administrator mode

To configure the system or network setting, log in to the administrator mode.

1 Select [Administrator], and click [Login].

Scope Web Connection		
Language	OS Language (OS Language)	
Login	C Public User	
View Mode	C Flash @ HTML	
	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.	
User Assist	✓ Display dialog box in case of warning. Login	
-	ip Data Management Utility	
	er is required to use the Data Management Utility. e Copy Protect Data	
-	e Stamp Data e Font/Macro (*1)	
Manag		
(*1) Can or above envi	nly run on Windows Internet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 and ironments.	

- 2 Enter the administrator password, and click [OK].
  - → To log in to the user mode as an administrator, select [Administrator (User Mode)], and enter the administrator password.
  - → Logging in to the administrator mode locks the control panel of this machine, and you will not be able to use it.
  - → Depending on the status of this machine, you may not be able to log in to the administrator mode.
  - → If [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] in the Administrator Settings is set to Mode 2 and an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times, it is no longer possible to log in to the administrator mode. For details on the Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error parameter, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
  - → The password entry page varies depending on the machine settings.

[On Mouse]: Point the cursor to display Help.

[On Focus]: Select an item to display Help.

Select Login			
	Administrator (Admin Mode)		
	C Administrator (User Mode)		
Password			
Help Display Sett	ing		
Help Display is a	a network-only function.		
On Mouse	ON 🔽		
On Focus	ON Y		
	OK Cancel		

#### Display mode in administrator mode

In [System Settings] - [Display Setting], the display mode in the administrator mode can be selected from [Tab Function Display] or [List Function Display]. This manual shows an example where [List Function Display] is set as the display mode.

In either display mode, the available items are the same.

In the default setting, the screen is displayed in [Tab Function Display].

In [Tab Function Display], click the desired icon to change the menu.

	Ready to Scan				
	Ready to Print				2
1 3 6 2 6 1	8 - 8 W - 8				
Meter Count	Total Counter				
ROM Version	Total	11			
	Total Duplex	0			
Import/Export	# of Originals	0			
Status Notification Setting	# of Used Paper	0			
Total Counter Notification	Copy Counter				
Setting	Total		11		
Date/Time Setting	Large Size		0		
Timer Setting	Print Counter				
Network Error Code Display	Total				
Setting	Large Size		0		
Reset	Scan / Fax Counter	4			
License Settings	Print		Scans		
Edit Font Macro	Total	0		0	
Curronemacio	Large Size 0 0				
	Fax TX	0			
	Fax RX	0			
	Paper Size / Type (	Counter			
	Paper Size	Paper Type		Count	
	11" x 17"	Not Specified		0	
	B 1/2" x 14"	Not Specified		0	1
	8 1/2* x 11*	Not Specified		0	
	5 1/2* x 8 1/2*	Not Specified		0	1
	A3	Not Specified		0	
	B4	Not Specified		0	
	85	Not Specified		0	
	A4	Not Specified		0	
				-	
	AS	Not Specified Not Specified		0	

In [List Function Display], change the menu from the list box.

Select the desired menu in the drop-down list, click [Display].

	Administrator		Logout
	Ready to Scan		
	In Menu (Admin Mode)		K
Maintenance 🔽 Di:	splay		E To Main Men
Meter Count	Total Counter		
ROM Version	Total	11	
	Total Duplex	0	
▶ Import/Export	# of Originals	0	
Status Notification Setting	# of Used Paper	0	
▶ Total Counter Notification	Copy Counter		
Setting	Total	11	
⊫ Date/Time Setting	Large Size	0	
≒ Timer Setting	Print Counter		
Network Error Code Display	Total	0	1
Setting	Large Size 0		
⊫ Reset	Scan / Fax Counter		
⊧ License Settings		Print	Scans
▶ Edit Font/Macro	Total	0	0
Earthonemacio	Large Size	0	0
	Fax TX	0	
	Fax RX	0	
	Paper Size / Type Co	ounter	
	Paper Size	Paper Type	Count
	11" x 17"	Not Specified	0
	8 1/2" x 14"	Not Specified	0
	8 1/2" x 11"	Not Specified	0
	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	Not Specified	0
	A3	Not Specified	0
	B4	Not Specified	0
		Not Specified	0
	85		
	A4	Not Specified	0
			0

You can log in to the user mode as an administrator to delete a job when User Authentication is enabled in this machine. If necessary, you can log in to the user mode as a User Box administrator when the User Box administrator is enabled using the control panel.

- → In the login page, select [Administrator] and click [Login].
  - → To log in to the user mode as a User Box administrator, select [User Box Administrator], and enter the User Box administrator's password.

KONNEA MINUTA LE SCOPE Web Connection				
Select Login	<ul> <li>Administrator (Admin Mode)</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>Administrator (User Mode)</li> <li>C User Box Administrator</li> </ul>			
Password				
Help Display Sett	ing			
Help Display is a	a network-only function.			
On Mouse	ON 💌			
On Focus	ON 💌			
	OK Cancel			

#### Reference

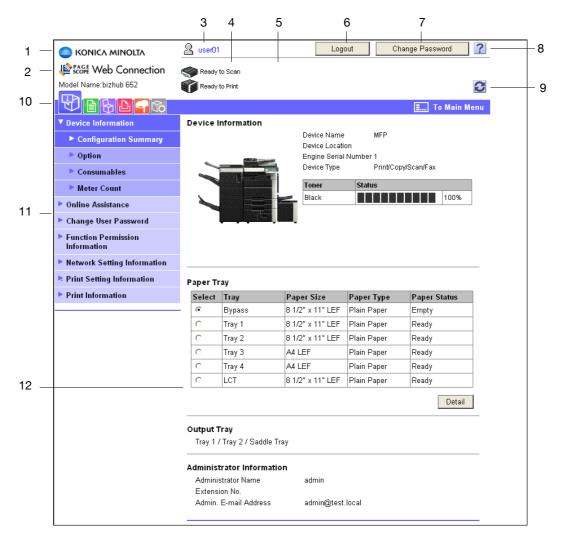
- To log in to the user mode as an administrator, select [Administrator] [Administrator (User Mode)], and enter the administrator password.
- If [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error] in the Administrator Settings is set to [Mode 2] and an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times, it is no longer possible to log in to the administrator mode. For details on the Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error parameter, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].
- The password entry page varies depending on the machine settings.
- You can display the explanation of functions (Help) when necessary. To display Help, select [ON] in Display Setting.
- [On Mouse]: Point the cursor to display Help.
- [On Focus]: Select an item to display Help.

## 13.3 Structure of pages

Logging in to **PageScope Web Connection** displays the page that is configured as shown below. The following shows an example of the page displayed when Device Information is selected in the Information tab.

#### Reference

• The contents of the **PageScope Web Connection** pages vary depending on the options installed in this machine or the settings of this machine.



No.	Item	Description	
1	KONICA MINOLTA logo	Click this logo to jump to the Konica Minolta Web site at the follow- ing URL. http://konicaminolta.com/	
2	PageScope Web Con- nection logo	Click this logo to display the version information of <b>PageScope Web Connection</b> .	
3	Login user name	Displays the current login mode icon and user name (public, admin- istrator, User Box administrator, registered user, or account). Click the user name to display the login user name.	
4	Status display	Displays the status of the printer and scanner sections of this ma- chine with icons and messages. Clicking the desired icon when an error occurs displays the information (Consumable Info, Paper Tray, or user registration page) associated with the icon to enable you to check the status.	
5	Message display	Displays the operating status of this machine.	
6	[To Login Screen]/ [Log- out]	Click this button to log out the current mode and log in again. When logged in as a public user, [To Login Screen] appears. When logged in as a registered user or an administrator, [Logout] appears.	

No.	Item	Description	
7	[Change Password]	Click this button to jump to the user password change page. This button appears only in the user mode page in which you logged in as a registered user.	
8	Help	You can display the online help for the currently configured function. You can specify the URL of the online help in the [online manual URL] of page 13-21.	
9	Refresh	Click this icon to refresh the information displayed in the page.	
10	lcon	Select the category of the item to be displayed. The following icons are displayed in the user mode. Information Job User Box Direct Print Store Address Customize	
11	Menu	Displays information and setting for the selected icon. The menu that appears in this area varies depending on which icon was selected.	
12	Information and settings	Displays the details of the item selected in the menu.	

#### 13.4 Overview of the user mode

After logging in to PageScope Web Connection in the user mode, the following functions can be specified.

#### 13.4.1 Information

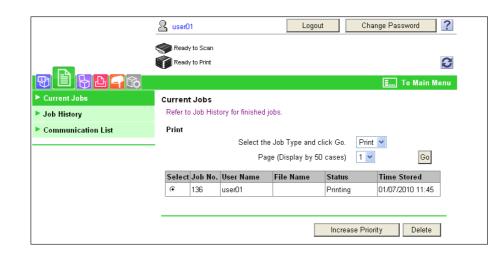
#### Reference

You can also check the explanation of the user mode in the **PageScope Web Connection** online help or **PageScope Web Connection** manual included in the application DVD-ROM. For details on the online help, refer to page 13-4.



Item	Description
[Device Informa- tion]	Enables you to check the components, options, consumables, and meter counts of this machine.
[Online Assist- ance]	Enables you to check the online assistance about this product.
[Change User Password]	Changes the password of the login user.
[Function Permis- sion Information]	Enables you to check the function permission information about the user or account.
[Network Setting Information]	Enables you to check the network settings of this machine.
[Print Setting In- formation]	Enables you to check the printer controller settings of this machine.
[Print Information]	Prints font or configuration information.

#### 13.4.2 Job



Item	Description
[Current Jobs]	Enables you to check the currently executed job or queued jobs.
[Job History]	Enables you to check the executed jobs.
[Communication List]	Enables you to check the completed transmission and reception jobs.

#### 13.4.3 User Box

#### Reference

For details on the operating procedures for User Boxes, refer to the [User's Guide Box Operations].

	A user01		Logout	Change Password <b>?</b>
	Ready to Scan			
	Ready to Print			3
				E To Main Menu
► Open User Box	Open User Bo	x(Public/Group/Pe	rsonal)	
Create User Box		n to save documents in Box can be used for pr		
> Open System User Box	User Box Num			(1-999999999)
Create System User Box		User Box Password		
	-			ОК
	User Box List			
		Search f	rom Index	ALL 🔽
		Page (Di	isplay by 50 cases)	1 🕶 Go
	User Box Number	User Box Name	Туре	Time Stored
	1	<u>box01</u>	Public	11/04/2009 17:43
		box02	Public	11/04/2009 17:43
	2	DUXUZ	Public	

Item	Description
[Open User Box]	Opens the currently created User Box (Public, Personal, or Group User Box) to en- able you to print, send, or download a document saved in the User Box or to change the User Box setting.
[Create User Box]	Enables to create a new User Box.

Item	Description	
[Open System User Box]	Allows you to open the System User Box (Bulletin Board/Polling TX/Memory RX/Re- lay User Box) and handle a document saved in the User Box or change the User Box setting. [Open System User Box] is displayed when the optional <b>Fax Kit</b> is installed.	
[Create System User Box]	Allows you to create a new Bulletin Board User Box or Relay User Box. [Create System User Box] is displayed when the optional <b>Fax Kit</b> is installed.	

#### 13.4.4 Direct print

	🔒 user01	Logout Change Password ?
	Ready to Scan	
	Ready to Print	9
		E To Main Menu
Direct Print	Direct Print	
	Basic Setting	
	Number of Sets	1 (1~9999)
	Sort	ON 💌
	Offset	OFF 🐱
	Paper Tray	Auto 💌
	Printed Side	1-Sided 💌
	Original Orientation	LEF 💌
	Finish	
	Punch	OFF 💌
	Staple	OFF 💌
	Binding Position	Left Bind 💌
	Application Setting	
		Display
	Select File	
	Printing of the following format files XPS, PDF(Ver1.6), TIFF, PS, PCL,	
	File	
		Browse
		OK Cancel

Item	Description
[Direct Print]	Specify a file saved in the computer to print it using this machine. If necessary, you can select Application to save a document in the specified User Box.

#### Reference

- [Direct Print] may not be displayed depending on settings in the administrator mode.
- A colored original is converted to black and white for printing even if Direct Print is specified.

[Store Address] may not be displayed depending on settings in the administrator mode.

	<u>8</u> u	ser01		Logout	Chan	ge Pass	word ?
	ج ا	leady to Scar					
_	٣	Ready to Print					2
						1	o Main Menu
▼ Address Book	Add	ress Bool	k List				
Store Address	The	other party v	no wants to transmit o	ata can be registered			
► Icon		New Regis	tration				
► Group				Search by number.	1-(	50	Go
► Program				Search from Index		~	Go
Temporary One-Touch	No	. Function	Name		S/MIME	Edit	Delete
► Subject	1	E-mail	Tokyo			Edit	Delete
► Text	2	E-mail	Osaka			Edit	Delete
	3	E-mail	Nagoya			Edit	Delete
	4	Fax	FAX01			Edit	Delete
	5	SMB	SMB1			Edit	Delete
	6	WebDAV	WebDAV1			Edit	Delete
	7	IP	IPFax1			Edit	Delete
	8	Internet Fax	I-FAX			Edit	Delete

Item	Description
[Address Book]	Enables you to check the address book registered in this machine or to register and change an address.
[Group]	Enables you to check the group address book registered in this machine or to reg- ister and change an address.
[Program]	Enables you to check the program address book registered in this machine or to register and change an address.
[Temporary One- Touch]	Enables you to check the temporary program address book registered in this ma- chine or to register and change an address.
[Subject]	Enables you to register or change up to 10 subjects when sending E-mails.
[Text]	Enables you to register or change up to 10 body messages when sending E-mails.

#### 13.4.6 Customize

This function enables you to specify the initial screen after logging in.

i.

	A user01	Logout	Change Password	?
	Ready to Scan			
_	Ready to Print			C
9 <u> </u>			E To Main Me	enu
Option	Option			
	<ul> <li>The following settings will be saved in If Cookie is deleted, the default screen</li> </ul>	Cookie. will become the Devi	ce Information screen.	
	Initial Screen after login			
	Main Menu			
	Information	Device Inform	nation 🖂	
	O Job	Current Jobs	$\sim$	
	C Box	Open User E	lox 🗸	
		Search fro	om List	
		Registered Bo	x Number	
			(1-999999999)	
	C Direct Print	Direct Print	~	
	O Store Address	Address Boo	ik 🗠	
	C Customize	Option 🛩		
			OK Cancel	
			UK Cancel	

Item	Description
[Option]	Enables you to configure the settings displayed in the initial page after logging in to this machine.

### 13.5 Administrator mode overview

Logging in to the administrator mode enables you to use the following functions.

Reference

- For details on the administrator mode, refer to the [User's Guide Network Administrator].
- The administrator modes are classified into two display modes: [Tab Function Display] and [List Function Display]. This manual shows an example where [List Function Display] is set as the display mode. For details, refer to page 13-11.

#### 13.5.1 Maintenance

	凝 Administrator		Logout
	Ready to Scan		
	In Menu (Admin Mode)		
Maintenance 🔽 Dis	play		E To Main M
► Meter Count	Total Counter		
▶ ROM Version	Total	11	
	Total Duplex	0	
Import/Export	# of Originals	0	
Status Notification Setting	# of Used Paper	0	
Total Counter Notification	Copy Counter		
Setting	Total	11	
Date/Time Setting	Large Size	0	
Timer Setting	Print Counter		
Network Error Code Display	Total	0	
Setting	Large Size	0	
Reset	Scan / Fax Counter		
License Settings		Print	Scans
Edit Font/Macro	Total	0	0
Latt . Chemidele	Large Size	0	0
	Fax TX	0	
	Fax RX	0	
		-	
	Paper Size / Type C		Count
	Paper Size 11" x 17"	Paper Type Not Specified	Count 0
	8 1/2" x 14"	Not Specified	0
	8 1/2" x 11"	Not Specified	0
	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	Not Specified	0
	A3	Not Specified	0
	B4	Not Specified	0
	B5	Not Specified	0
		Not Specified	0
	A4	Not opechica	
	A4 A5	Not Specified	0

Item	Description
[Meter Count]	Enables you to check the meter count of this machine.
[ROM Version]	Enables you to check the ROM version.
[Import/Export]	Saves (exports) setting information of this machine as a file, or writes (imports) it from a file to this machine.
[Status Notifica- tion Setting]	Configure the function to be reported to a registered user when an error has oc- curred in this machine. Specify the destination and items to notify a registered user of an error.
[Total Counter Notification Set- ting]	Configure the setting to notify the target user of the total counter by E-mail, and reg- ister the E-mail address of the destination.
[Date/Time Set- ting]	Specify the date and time displayed in this machine.
[Timer Setting]	Configure Power Save or Weekly Timer Setting in this machine.

Item	Description
[Network Error Code Display Setting]	Specify whether to display the network error code.
[Reset]	Clears all settings for the network, controller and destinations.
[License Settings]	Allows you to issue a license and enable functions. Also, a request code can be is- sued.
[Edit Font/Macro]	Adds font or macro.
[Job Log]	Allows you to create and download log data of the jobs that were executed in this machine.

## 13.5.2 System Settings

#### Reference

• To use this machine as a scanner with the application software under TWAIN, install the dedicated driver software "KONICA MINOLTA TWAIN". For details, refer to the TWAIN driver manual in the DVD supplied together with this machine.

	Administrator	Logout ?
	Ready to Scan	
	In Menu (Admin Mode)	e
System Settings 🛛 🔽 Disp	olay	E To Main Menu
► Machine Setting	Machine Setting	
Register Support Information	Device Location	
Network TWAIN	Administrator Registration	
▶ User Box Setting	Administrator Name	admin
Stamp Settings	E-mail Address	admin@test.local
Blank Page Print Settings	Extension No.	
Skip Job Operation Settings	Input Machine Address Device Name	MFP
▶ Flash Display Setting	E-mail Address	mfp@test.local
System Connection Setting		
▶ Display Setting		OK Cancel
▶ Outline PDF Setting		

Item	Description
[Machine Setting]	Changes the registration information of this machine.
[Register Sup- port Information]	Specify support information (such as contact name, corporate URL, or online man- ual URL) of this machine. To display this information, select [Information] - [Online Assistance].
[Network TWAIN]	Specify the time to release the operation lock when scanning (excluding push-scan- ning). If necessary, configure settings to enable saving or reading a document in or from the external memory.
[User Box Setting]	Define the User Box functions such as deleting an unnecessary User Box or speci- fying the document deletion time. If necessary, configure settings to enable saving or reading a document in or from the external memory.
[Stamp Settings]	Register a header or footer. In addition, in [Fax TX Settings], specify whether to cancel the stamp setting for fax transmission.
[Blank Page Print Settings]	Specify whether to print contents configured in "Stamp/Composition" on blank pages.
[Skip Job Opera- tion Settings]	Specify whether to skip a job.
[Flash Display Setting]	Specify whether to allow or restrict the flash display.

Item	Description
[System Connec- tion Setting]	Configure the automatic setting of Prefix/Suffix or the setting for printing data in a cellular phone. In [Application Connection Setting], specify whether to cancel a connection from this machine to <b>PageScope My Panel Manager</b> .
[Display Setting]	Select the display mode in the administrator mode from [Tab Function Display] or [List Function Display].
[Outline PDF Set- ting]	Specify whether to outline text.

### 13.5.3 Security

	凝 Admir	istrator			L	ogout
	Ready	to Scan				
	📦 In Men	u (Admin Mode)				í.
Security V Di	splay					To Main Mer
▼ PKI Settings	Device	Certificate List				
Device Certificate Setting	Nev	Registration				
▶ SSL Setting	Default	Issuer	Subject	Validity Period	Detail	Setting
▶ Protocol Setting	c	TEST123456.test	TEST123456.test	07/09/2009	Detail	Setting
External Certificate Setting						
Certificate Verification Settings					OK	Cancel
▶ Address Reference Setting						
Restrict User Access						
▶ Copy Security						
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Password						

Item	Description
[PKI Settings]	Register device certificates and configure the SSL, protocol, or external certificate settings.
[Certificate Verifi- cation Settings]	Specify the items to validate a certificate.
[Address Refer- ence Setting]	When giving destination access permission, specify a reference allowed group name or access allowed level.
[Restrict User Ac- cess]	Specify the function to restrict user operations.
[Copy Security]	Specify whether to use the copy guard or password copy function.
[Auto Logout]	Specify the time to automatically log out the administrator or user mode.
[Administrator Password Set- ting]	Specify the password to log in to the administrator mode.

[Administrator Password Setting] is not displayed when:

- The SSL certificate is not installed
- [Enhanced Security Mode] is enabled.
- [Mode using SSL/TLS] is set to [None] in [Security] [PKI Settings] [SSL Setting] even though a device certificate is already registered

#### **13.5.4** User authentication/Account track

	Administrator	Logout 🥐
	Ready to Scan	
	n Menu (Admin Mode)	Ð
User Auth/Account Track 💌 Dis	play	💷 To Main Menu
General Settings	General Settings	
User Authentication Setting	User Authentication	ON (MFP)
Account Track Settings	Public User Access	ON (With Login)
▶ External Server Settings	Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory)	Minute (1-60)
▶ Public User Box Setting	Account Track	ON 💌
▶ Scan to Home Settings	Account Track Input Method	Account Name & Password 🖂
Scan to Authorized Folder Settings	Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	Synchronize
Jeunga	Number of Counters Assigned for - Users	500 (1-999)
	When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum	Skip Job 💌
		OK Cancel

Item	Description
[General Settings]	Configure the User Authentication or Account Track setting in this machine. To en- able authentication, configure the number of assigned counters or the When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum setting.
[User Authentica- tion Setting]	When enabling User Authentication, register the target user or configure user set- ting.
[Account Track Settings]	When enabling Account Track, register and edit the target account.
[External Server Settings]	When enabling external server authentication, register the external server.
[Public User Box Setting]	Specify the upper limit of the number of User Boxes.
[Scan to Home Settings]	Configure the setting to send a file to the Home folder.
[Scan to Author- ized Folder Set- tings]	Configure settings to restrict manual transmission destination.

#### 13.5.5 Network

	Sa Administrator	Legoz
	Senty to Scan	
	C Neru (Amer Mide)	
Network C	splay	🚛 To Main Ma
TCRMP Setting	TCP IP Setting	
► TCP/IP Setting	* is reflected after result.	
> IP Filtering	TCP/IP*	
* IPsec	(Turn the main switch OFF, and the	ON When changing saffings )
E-mail Setting	Network Speed	Auto (10M/100Mbps)
LDAP Setting	IP Address Setting Method*	Auto Setting
IPP Setting		SP DHCP*
FTP Setting		F BootP* @ ARP/PWO*
SNMP Setting		P Add P
SMB Setting	IP Address	0000
* SMB Service Settings	Subnet Mask	0.0.00
	Default Gateway	0.0.0.5
* Banjour Setting	P6	ON 💌
* NefWare Setting	Auto IP46 Setting*	ON M
· AppleTalk Setting	DHCP-6 Setting	ON 💌
Network Fax Setting	Link-Local Address	
* WebDAV Settings	Glubal Address Prefix Length	
OpenAPI Setting	Pretix Length	
• TCP Socket Setting	Gateway Address	
EEEB02.1X Authentication	RAW Part Number	L]
Setting	P Pot 1	9100 (1-65535)
LLTD Setting	FFpt 2	9112 (1.65536)
* SSDP Settings	F Part 3	9113 (1-65536)
* Bluetooth Setting	9 Pac 4	9114 (1-66536)
	9 Pot 5	9115 (1-66536)
	P Part 6	9116 (1-65536)
	DNS Host	[international (recent)
	DNS Host Name	
	Dynamic DNS Satting	Disable 👻
	LLMNR Setting	Enable 💌
	<b>DNS Domain Name Setting</b>	
	DNS Domain Auto Obtain	Enable 🐱
	DNS Search Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Enable 💌
	DNS Default Domain Name	
	DNS Search Domain Name1	
	DNS Search Domain Name2	
	DNS Search Domain Name3	
	<b>DNS Server Setting(Pv4)</b>	1
	DNS Sever Auto Ottain	Enable 💓
	Primary CINS Server	0.0.00
	Secondary DNS Server1	0000
	Secondary DNS Sener2	0000
	DNS Server Setting(IPv6)	
	DNS Sener Acts Ottain	Enable M
	Primary DNS Server	
	Secondary DNS Server1	E.:
	Secondary DNS Server2	
	SLP Setting	
	SUP Setting	Eastha M
	34.9	Enable 🐸
	LPD Setting	
	LPD Setting LPD	Enable 💌
		Enable 💌

Item	Description
[TCP/IP Setting]	Configure the TCP/IP setting when connecting this machine via network.
[E-mail Setting]	Configure the settings to send or receive E-mails (including Internet fax), and specify the extension function such as E-mail authentication.
[LDAP Setting]	Configure the settings to register the LDAP server.
[IPP Setting]	Configure the IPP print setting.
[FTP Setting]	Configure the settings to use this machine as an FTP client or server.
[SNMP Setting]	Configure SNMP settings.
[SMB Setting]	Configure the SMB client, WINS, SMB print, or Direct Hosting setting.
[Web Service Set- tings]	Configure the settings to perform scanning or printing using Web services.
[Bonjour Setting]	Configure Bonjour settings.
[NetWare Setting]	Configure NetWare settings.
[AppleTalk Set- ting]	Configure AppleTalk settings.
[Network Fax Set- ting]	Configure the direct SMTP TX or direct SMTP RX settings.
[WebDAV Set- tings]	Configure the WebDAV settings.
[OpenAPI Set- tings]	Configure the OpenAPI settings.
[TCP Socket Set- ting]	Configure the TCP Socket settings to have a data communication between this ma- chine and the application software in your computer.

Item	Description
[IEEE802.1x Au- thentication Set- ting]	Configure IEEE802.1X authentication settings.
[LLTD Setting]	Select whether to enable or disable LLTD.
[SSDP Settings]	Configure the SSDP settings.
[Bluetooth Set- ting]	<ul> <li>Select whether to enable or disable Bluetooth.</li> <li>To enable a Bluetooth communication, contact your service representative in advance.</li> </ul>

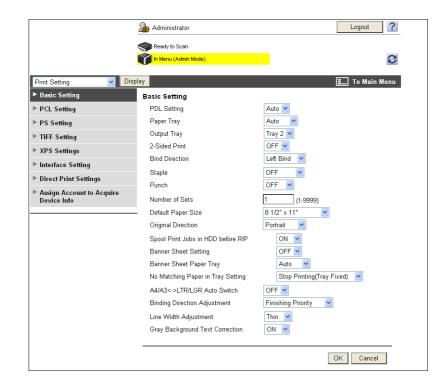
#### 13.5.6 User Box

Logging in to the administrator mode enables you to handle a User Box without entering the password when opening it.

	凝 Administrator			Logout			
	Ready to Scan						
	📦 In Menu (Admin	Mode)		Ŕ			
Box 🗸	Display			E To Main Men			
Open User Box	Open User Bo	x(Public/Group/Perso	nal)				
▶ Create User Box		to save documents in the r Box can be used for printing					
▶ Open System User Box	User Box Num			00000000			
▶ Create System User Box	OSEI DOX NUIT	User Box Number (1-999999999)					
	User Box List						
		Search from	Index	ALL 💌			
		Page (Displa	y by 50 cases)	1 🕶 Go			
	User Box Number	User Box Name	Туре	Time Stored			
	1	box01	Public	11/04/2009 17:43			
	2	<u>box02</u>	Public	11/04/2009 17:43			
	3	box03	Public	11/04/2009 17:44			

Item	Description
[Open User Box]	<ul> <li>Opens the currently created User Box (Public, Group, or Personal User Box) to enable you to change the User Box setting.</li> <li>Document operations are not available in the administrator mode.</li> <li>User Box operations are available even if a password is specified for the target User Box.</li> </ul>
[Create User Box]	Enables to create a new User Box.
[Open System User Box]	<ul> <li>Open the System User Box (Bulletin Board, Relay, or Annotation User Box) to enable you to handle a document saved in the User Box or change the User Box setting.</li> <li>The Bulletin Board and Relay User Boxes are available when the optional Fax Kit is installed.</li> </ul>
[Create System User Box]	<ul> <li>Enables you to create a new Bulletin Board, Relay, or Annotation User Box.</li> <li>The Bulletin Board and Relay User Boxes are available when the optional Fax Kit is installed.</li> </ul>

#### 13.5.7 Printer Setting



Item	Description
[Basic Setting]	Specify the default values of the printer.
[PCL Setting]	Specify the default values in the PCL mode.
[PS Setting]	Specify the default values in the PS mode.
[TIFF Setting]	Specify the paper to print TIFF images.
[XPS Settings]	Configure the XPS print settings.
[Interface Setting]	Specify the timeout period of the interface.
[Direct Print Set- tings]	Configure the settings to enable direct printing using PageScope Web Connection.
[Assign Account to Acquire Device Info]	Select whether to specify a password to acquire device information through the printer driver. If [ON] is selected, specify the password.

	& A	dministrato	r		Lo	gout
	S a	leady to Scar				
		Menu (Admi	n Mode)			£
Store Address V Displ					<b>≣</b> ] Т	o Main Men
Address Book		ress Bool	List		' <u>استا</u>	o main men
► Store Address	The	other party v	ho wants to transmit data can be register	ed.		
▶ Icon		New Regis	tration			
▶ Group			Search by number	r. 1-	-50	Go
▶ Program			Search from Inde	x	~	Go
▶ Temporary One-Touch	No.	Function	Name	S/MIME	Edit	Delete
▶ Subject	1	E-mail	Tokyo		Edit	Delete
► Text	2	E-mail	Osaka		Edit	Delete
▶ Prefix/Suffix	3	E-mail	Nagoya		Edit	Delete
	4	Fax	FAXD1		Edit	Delete
	5	SMB	SMB1		Edit	Delete
	6	WebDAV	WebDAV1		Edit	Delete
	7	IP	IPFax1		Edit	Delete
	8	Internet Fax	I-FAX		Edit	Delete

Item	Description
[Address Book]	Enables you to check the address book registered in this machine or to register and change an address.
[Group]	Enables you to check the group address book registered in this machine or to reg- ister and change an address.
[Program]	Enables you to check the program address book registered in this machine or to register and change an address.
[Temporary One- Touch]	Enables you to check the temporary program address book registered in this ma- chine or to register and change an address.
[Subject]	Registers up to 10 subjects when sending E-mails.
[Text]	Registers up to 10 body messages to be used when sending E-mails.
[Application Reg- istration]	<ul> <li>Registers application settings and server addresses when using the applications such as RightFax Server registered in the external server. Registering applications and servers enables you to automatically connect to the server of the selected application.</li> <li>[Application Registration] is not displayed when the optional Fax Kit is installed.</li> </ul>
[Prefix/Suffix]	Registers Prefix or Suffix to be added as destination information when E-mailing.

#### 13.5.9 Fax Settings

	🌆 Administrator	Logout ?
	Ready to Scan	
	📦 In Menu (Admin Mode)	3
Fax Settings 💽 Disp	lay	E To Main Menu
Header/Footer Position	Header/Footer Position	
▶ Line Parameter Setting	Header Position	Outside Body Text 💌
▶ TX/RX Settings	Footer Position	OFF 🖌
▶ Function Setting		
▶ PBX Connection Setting		OK Cancel
▶ Report Settings		
▶ Multi Line Settings		
▶ Network Fax Setting		
▶ Header Information		
▶ Fax Print Quality Settings		

Item	Description	
[Header/Footer Position]	Configure the setting to print the sender or receiving information.	
[Line Parameter Setting]	Specify the fax line such as Dialing Method.	
[TX/RX Settings]	Configure the paper, User Box, and other settings for sending or receiving data.	
[Function Setting]	Configure the fax settings for Memory RX or Network Fax.	
[PBX Connection Setting]	Specify the outside line at PBX connection.	
[Report Settings]	Configure the setting for a report, for example, Activity Report, to be output when sending or receiving data.	
[Multi Line Set- tings]	<ul><li>Specify the parameters and functions of the extended line.</li><li>This item is displayed when a line is extended.</li></ul>	
[Network Fax Set- ting]	Configure the setting to use network fax.	
[Header Informa- tion]	Registers sender information and fax number when sending data.	
[Fax Print Quality Settings]	<ul> <li>Specify whether to correct a received G3 fax according to the resolution.</li> <li>The low resolution refers to 200 dpi × 100 dpi, 200 dpi × 200 dpi, or 300 dpi × 300 dpi, and the high resolution refers to 400 dpi × 400 dpi.</li> </ul>	

#### 13.5.10 Setting for each purpose

Configure the settings according to the instructions shown in the window for items requiring multiple settings.

The available setting items are as follows.

- Configure the settings for sending a scanned document
- Configure the network print settings
- Restrict users using this machine

	Administrator
	Ready to Scan
	👔 In Menu (Admin Mode)
Wizard	Display To Main Menu
Wizard	Wizard The setup required for the selected workflow can be accomplished through the wizard.
	Wizard
Setup is completed.	The setup is performed according to the procedure outlined in the operation objective. Please select a setting.
	☞ TX Setting for scan documents.
	C Network print settings.
	C Restrict users from using this device.
	Next

#### Reference

- As the setting procedure proceeds, its progress flow is displayed on the left.
- If setting is cancelled, you will return to the Setting for each purpose screen after the items that were configured before cancellation have been applied.

# **14** Troubleshooting

## 14 Troubleshooting

## 14.1 Cannot print

This section describes how to solve issues and problems that you may encounter while using the printer.

If you cannot print even when you have completed the printing procedure, check the following items in order from beginning to end.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
A message saying "Printer is not connected" or "Print Error" ap- pears on the computer screen.	The printer driver specified when printing may not be sup- ported by the printer controller.	Check the specified printer name.
	The network or USB cable may be disconnected.	Check that the cable is correctly connected.
	An error may have occurred on this machine.	Check the control panel of this machine.
	Memory may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
A postscript error appears on the computer screen.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
	There may be an error in the application software settings.	Refer to the user's manual of the application software to check the settings.
	The file printing settings may be incorrect.	Change the settings and try to print again.
Print processing on the compu- ter finished, but printing does not start.	The printer driver specified when printing may not be sup- ported by the printer controller.	Check the specified printer name
	The network or USB cable may be disconnected.	Check that the cable is correctly connected.
	An error may have occurred on this machine.	Check the control panel of this machine.
	Unprocessed jobs may remain on this machine and be waiting to be processed.	Check the processing order for the job using Job List on the con- trol panel of this machine. When [Skip Job Operation Set- tings] is enabled in the [Adminis- trator Settings] of this machine, only the jobs without a problem are processed.
	When executing the print job, [Save in User Box] may have been specified.	Check from the control panel of the machine whether the intend- ed print job is held in a User Box
	When executing the print job, [Secure Print Only] may have been specified.	Check from the control panel of the machine whether the intend- ed print job is held in the [Secure Print User Box].
	[Secure Print Only] may be specified on the machine.	Use [Secure Print] when execut- ing the print job.
	When the account track is ena- bled, you may have entered an unregistered account track code or password.	Enter the correct account track code and password.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
	When the user authentication is enabled, you may have entered an unregistered user name or password.	Enter the correct user name or password.
	Different encryption passphras- es may be specified for the printer driver and the machine.	Specify the same encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver.
	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
	Network connection with the printer controller is not estab- lished (when connecting via the network).	Contact your network administrator.
	This machine may be in the enhanced security mode.	Configure authentication settings in the enhanced security mode. For details, contact the printer ac ministrator.
Printing order is disturbed - a job sent later is printed before the preceding jobs.	An error may have occurred on the printer for a reason such as running out of paper.	When [Skip Job Operation Set- tings] is enabled in the [Adminis- trator Settings] of the printer, only the jobs without a problem are processed and those with any problem are held in queue.
Secure print is not available.	The password rules may be en- abled on the machine.	Specify a password according to the password rules.
	Different encryption passphras- es may be specified for the printer driver and the machine.	Specify the same encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver.
Jobs saved in a User Box have disappeared.	Jobs saved in a User Box may be deleted due to the settings on the machine.	Check the User Box settings for the machine. For details, refer to the [User's Guide Box Opera- tions].
Printing in the user authentica- tion or account track mode is	The user name, account name or password is incorrect.	Enter the correct user name, account name and password.
not available.	User authentication or account track may be disabled on the printer driver.	Enable user authentication or ac count track on the printer driver.
	Different encryption passphras- es may be specified for the printer driver and the machine.	Specify the same encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver.
	The entered user name or ac- count name may not be author- ized.	Check with the administrator whether the user name or ac- count name concerned is author ized for printing.
Printing is not available when you have selected [Public User] in user authentication.	Printing by public users may be prohibited on the machine.	Check with the administrator whether printing by public users is permitted.

When the above troubleshooting does not eliminate the problem, refer to the [User's Guide Copy Operations].

#### 14.2 Cannot configure the settings/Cannot print according to the settings

Check the following items when you cannot configure settings of the printer driver or cannot print according to the settings you have configured.

Reference

• Some items for the printer driver may not be configured simultaneously.

#### 14.2.1 The printer driver settings have no effect

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Cannot select items in the printer driver.	Some functions cannot be com- bined.	Grayed out items cannot be con- figured.
A "conflict" message saying "unable to configure" or "func- tion will be canceled" appears.	You are trying to configure the functions that cannot be combined.	Check carefully the functions you have specified, and then specify the functions that can be combined.
Cannot print according to the settings you have configured.	The settings may not be config- ured correctly.	Check the setting of each item of the printer driver.
	The selected functions can be combined in the printer driver, but may not be combined in this machine.	
	The paper size or paper orienta- tion specified in the application may take precedence over the settings in the printer driver when printing.	Configure settings in the applica- tion correctly.
The watermark cannot be print- ed.	The watermark settings may not be configured correctly.	Check the watermark settings.
	The density of the watermark may be too light.	Check the density setting.
	Some graphic applications do not print watermarks.	When using such a program, the watermark cannot be printed.
The staple function cannot be specified.	The staple function requires the optional <b>Finisher FS-526</b> or <b>Finisher FS-527</b> .	Install the required options and enable them on the printer driver.
	Available paper types vary de- pending on the option installa- tion status. For <b>Finisher FS-526</b> , the staple function cannot be used when the Paper Type is set to Enve- lope, Thick, or Transparency. For <b>Finisher FS-527</b> , the staple function cannot be used when the Paper Type is set to Enve- lope, Thick 3, Thick 4, or Trans- parency.	Check the setting of each item of the printer driver.
Cannot staple.	When printing a large number of pages, stapling cannot be per- formed.	Change the number of pages to be printed.
	If the document contains pages of different sizes, stapling can- not be performed.	Check the document.
The stapling position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the stapling position in the printer driver settings.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Cannot specify the punch func- tion.	The optional <b>Finisher</b> and <b>Punch Kit</b> are required.	Install the required options and enable them on the printer driver.
	The hole punching cannot be specified when Booklet, Trans- parency, or Envelope is selected as the paper type.	Check the setting of each item of the printer driver.
Cannot punch.	Printed pages may be fed out without being punched if the pa- per is loaded into the paper source with an incorrect orienta- tion.	Check the orientation setting.
The punch position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the punching position in the printer driver settings.
Combination fails; pages are not combined, but are printed separately.	Originals having different orien- tations are combined.	Align the orientations of the original.
The overlay is not printed properly.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Simplify the overlay to reduce the data size.
Garbled characters are detect- ed when printing.	It may be impossible to obtain any outline image from the OS.	If garbled characters are detected while printing data using the PCL driver, set download fonts to bit- map fonts, and set printer fonts to OFF.
Images are not printed properly.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Simplify the images to reduce the data size.
Paper is not fed from the speci- fied paper source.	Paper will not be fed from the specified paper source if that paper source is loaded with pa- per of a different size or orienta- tion.	Load the paper of the appropriate size and orientation into the de- sired paper source.
The user authentication or ac- count track setting field is grayed out and cannot be spec- ified.	User authentication or account track may be disabled on the Windows printer driver.	In the [Configure] tab, enable user authentication or account track.

#### 14.2.2 Others

14

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Cannot install the printer driver.	It has already been installed in Windows Vista/Server 2008 as a printer compatible with the Web service print function.	If you try to install a printer driver in Windows Vista/Server 2008 by use of the Web service print func- tion, it is recognized as installed before the actual installation is completed. Uninstall the printer in the [Network] Window, and then install it again.

## 14.2.3 Error message

Message	Cause and remedy	
Cannot connect to the network	A connection to the network was not able to be established. Make sure that the network cable is correctly connected. In addition, make sure that [Network Settings] in [Administrator Settings] have been cor- rectly configured.	



## 15 Appendix

## 15.1 Product specifications

Item		Specifications	
Туре		Built-in printer controller	
Power supply		Common with the machine	
RAM		2,048 MB	
HDD		250 GB	
l/F		Ethernet (1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T) USB 2.0	
Frame type		Ethernet 802.2 Ethernet 802.3 Ethernet II Ethernet SNAP	
Supported p	rotocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, DHCPv6, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over, TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, DPWS, S/MIME, IPsec, DNS, DynamicDNS, LLMNR, LLTD	
Printer language		PCL5/c6 Emulation PCL XL ver.3.0 Emulation PostScript 3 Emulation (3016) XPS ver.1.0	
Operating er conditions	vironment	Temperature: 10 to 30 degrees Centigrade Humidity: 15 to 85%RH	
Resolution Data processing		600 × 600 dpi (Print and Fax functions) 400 × 400 dpi (Fax function) 200 × 200 dpi (Fax function)	
	Print	600 dpi × 600 dpi	
Supported paper sizes		Maximum standard size (For banner printing: Paper width 8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 to 297 mm) × paper length 18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1200 mm))	
Fonts (Built-in fonts)		<pcl> European 80 fonts <postscript 3="" emulation=""> European 137 fonts</postscript></pcl>	
Compatible computer		IBM PC or compatible, and Macintosh (PowerPC, Intel Processor: Intel Processor is for Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6 only)	

Item	Specifications	
Printer driver	KONICA MINOLTA PCL Driver (PCL driver)	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard ×64 Edi- tion Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 Enterprise Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium * Windows 7 Professional * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Ultimate * Support 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environ- ment.

Item

Specifications	
KONICA MINOLTA Post- Script Driver (PS driver)	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Serv- ice Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard ×64 Edi- tion Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edi- tion Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic * Windows 7 Home Premium Windows 7 Professional * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Ultimate * Support 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environ- ment.
KONICA MINOLTA XPS Driver (XPS driver)	Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Basic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic * Windows 7 Home Premium * Windows 7 Professional * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Ultimate * * Supports 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environ- ment.
PostScript PPD driver (PS-PPD)	Mac OS 9.2 or later Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5 /10.6

Item	Specifications	
	Fax driver	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Serv ice Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard ×64 Edi- tion Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edi- tion Windows Vista Business * Windows Vista Enterprise * Windows Vista Home Pasic * Windows Vista Home Premium * Windows Vista Ultimate * Windows Server 2008 Standard * Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic * Windows 7 Home Premium * Windows 7 Professional Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Enterprise * Windows 7 Ultimate * Support 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environ- ment.
Utility	<ul> <li>PageScope Web Connection Compatible Web browsers: <for 2003="" 2008="" 7="" r2="" server="" vista="" windows="" xp=""> </for></li> <li>Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6/7 (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) For Macintosh MacOS 9.x/MacOS X&gt; </li> <li>Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) </li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)  </li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)  </li> <li></li></ul>	
Citrix Operating Environ- ment	(font/macro data management). The operation of this driver has been confirmed in the following environ- ments. Server OS: Windows Server 2003/2008 (32bit/64bit) Citrix: Citrix® XenApp® 5.0/6.0 Client OS: Windows XP/Vista/7 ICAClient: ICA32bit/64bit * For operating in an environment other than those described above, con- sult the dealer.	

## 15.2 Printing reports

## 15.2.1 Configuration page

Paper Tray Output Tray Binding Position Double-Sided Staple Hole-Punch		<i>Installed</i> Printer HDD Printer Memory	_	
Basic Setting Default Paper Size Paper Tray Output Tray Binding Position Double-Sided Staple Hole-Punch	= A4 = Auto	Printer HDD	-	
Default Paper Size Paper Tray Output Tray Binding Position Double-Sided Staple Hole-Punch	= Auto		-	
Output Tray Binding Position Double-Sided Staple Hole-Punch				Installed 2304 [MByte]
Double-Sided Staple Hole-Punch	= Left Binding	Printer Information		
Hole-Punch	= Off	Installed Tray		
	= Off = Off	Tray 1		A4
	= Off = Portrait	Tray 2 Tray 3	=	
	= 1	Tray 4	=	
No Matching Paper in Tray S		LCŤ	=	A4
	<ul> <li>Stop Printing (Tray Fixed)</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	Ontion		
	= On = Off	Option Duplex Unit		Installed
	= Auto	Finisher		Not Available
	= Disable	Punch Unit		Not Available
Banner Paper Tray	= Auto	Fold Unit		Not Available
OCI Cotting		Fax Unit		Not Available
PCL Setting Font Source	= 1	Mailbin Unit	=	Not Available
	= 0	Firmware Version		
	= 12.00			
	= 10.00	Management Version	=	
	= PC-8, Code Page 437 = 64 [Line / Page]	Printer Controller	=	A2WU0Y0-3000-
	= Off	Network		
C Catting		MAC Address		
Print Reports	= Disable	MAC Address MAC Address	120	00:20:6B:
	= 4	MAC Address	-	00.20.00.
	= Auto	TCP/IP		
5	= 4	TCP/IP		Enable
Image Destination Profile		IP Address		150.17.97.96
Graphics RGB Source Graphics Destination Profile	= 4 = Auto	Subnet Mask Default Gateway		255.255.0.0 150.17.96.1
	= None	RAW Port 0		9100
		RAW Port 1		9112
(PS Settings		RAW Port 2		9113
Verify XPS Digital Signature	= Disable	RAW Port 3		9114
Test Print		RAW Port 4 RAW Port 5		9115 9116
Configuration			-	0110
PCL Font List		Netware		
PS Font List		Netware	=	Disable
Demo Page		Appletalk		
/F Setting		Appletalk	=	Disable
Network Rx Timeout	= 60 [sec.]		1000	
	= 60 [sec.]	SMB	1000	
Print XPS Errors	= Enable	SMB	=	Enable

#### 15.2.2 PCL font list

## KONICA MINOLTA 552

#### PCL Font List Resident Fonts

P.1

Font
00000
00001
00002
00003
00004
00005
00006
00007
00008
00009
00010
00011
00012
00013
00014
00015
00016
00017
00018
00019
00020
00021
00022
00023
00024

15-8

#### 15.2.3 PS font list

## **KONICA MINOLTA 552**

#### **PS** Font List

**Resident Fonts** 

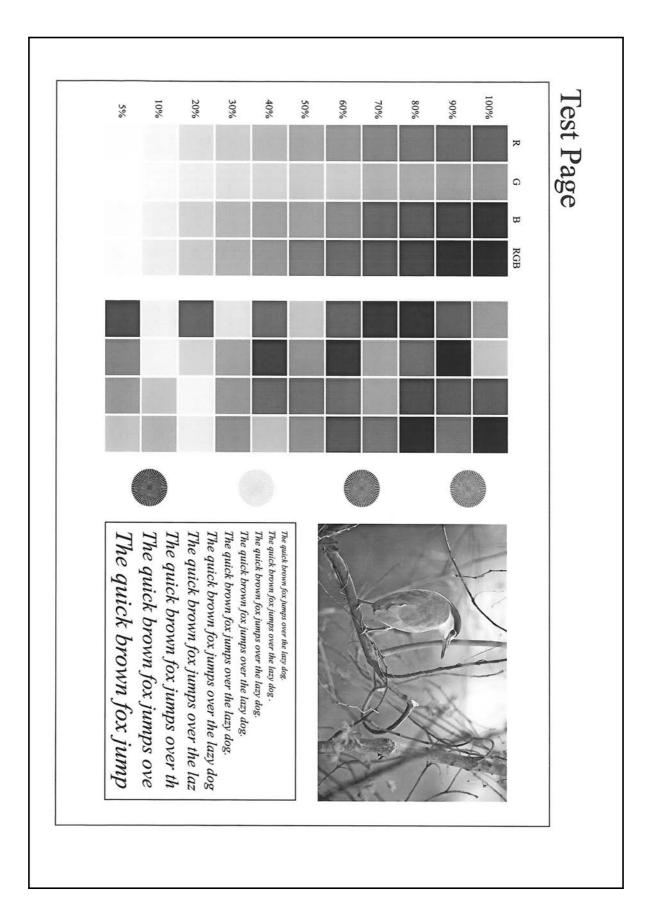
Font		Font #
Albertus MT	AlbertusMT	00000
Albertus MT Italic	AlbertusMT-Italic	00001
Albertus MT Light	AlbertusMT-Light	00002
Antique Olive Roman	AntiqueOlive-Roman	00003
Antique Olive Italic	AntiqueOlive-Italic	00004
Antique Olive Bold	AntiqueOlive-Bold	00005
Antique Olive Compact	AntiqueOlive-Compact	00006
Apple Chancery	Apple-Chancery	00007
Arial	ArialMT	00008
Arial Italic	Arial-ItalicMT	00009
Arial Bold	Arial-BoldMT	00010
Arial Bold Italic	Arial-BoldItalicMT	00011
TC Avant Garde Gothic Book	AvantGarde-Book	00012
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	AvantGarde-BookOblique	00013
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	AvantGarde-Demi	00014
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	AvantGarde-DemiOblique	00015
Bodoni Roman	Bodoni	00016
Bodoni Italic	Bodoni-Italic	00017
Bodoni Bold	Bodoni-Bold	00018
Bodoni Bold Italic	Bodoni-BoldItalic	00019
Bodoni Poster	Bodoni-Poster	00020
Bodoni Poster Compressed	Bodoni-PosterCompressed	00021
TC Bookman Light	Bookman-Light	00022
ITC Bookman Light Italic	Bookman-LightItalic	00023
ITC Bookman Demi	Bookman-Demi	00024
ITC Bookman Demi Italic	Bookman-Demiltalic	00025
u≪®∧⊖∧	Carta	00026
Chicago	Chicago	00027
Clarendon Roman	Clarendon	00028
Clarendon Bold	Clarendon-Bold	00029

15

P.1

15.2

## 15.2.4 GDI demo page



# 15.3 PPD driver (For Linux and applications)

#### 15.3.1 PPD driver types

The PPD driver contains the PPD information for Mac OS 9, Linux, and applications.

- Driver for Linux: Install for use with Linux (Contains PPD for Linux and PPD for OpenOffice)
- Driver for applications: Install when using applications such as Adobe PageMaker that require the PPD driver.

# 15.3.2 PPD driver for Linux

Operating environment

The PPD driver operates in the environment where systems are combined as follows.

- OS:Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 -CupsVersion:1.1
- OS:SuSE Linux 10.1 -CupsVersion:1.2
- OpenOffice v1.1.5

## **Registering the PPD driver for Linux**

- 1 Copy the PPD file to the CUPS model directory. (/usr/share/cups/model for major Linux)
- 2 In [Add Printer] of the CUPS printing system, specify PPD to add this machine.
  - → For details on CUPS, refer to [Help] in the CUPS Web management page.

## Configuring the PPD driver for Linux

In [Configure Printer] of the CUPS printing system, configure the functions.

# Registering the PPD driver for OpenOffice

- 1 In [Add Printer] of the CUPS printing system, specify PPD to add this machine.
- 2 Open the OpenOfficePrinterAdministrator tool.
- 3 Click [New Printer].
- 4 In the [Choose a device type] window, select [add a printer], and then click [Next].
- 5 In the [Choose a driver] window, click [import].
- 6 Select [KONICA MINOLTA652/602Series OpenOffice PPD], and then click [OK].
- 7 From the [Please Select a Suitable driver.] list, select [KONICA MINOLTA652/602Series OpenOffice PPD], and then click [Next].
- 8 In the [Choose a command line] window, select the printer registered to CUPS, and then click [Next].
- 9 Click [Finish].

## Printing with OpenOffice

- 1 In OpenOffice, select File-Print.
- 2 Select [KONICA MINOLTA652/602Series OpenOffice PPD] in [Printer name].
- 3 Click [Properties].
- Select the desired setting in [Page size], and then click [OK].To configure settings other than Page Size, click [Configure Printer] in CUPS.
- 5 Click [OK] in the OpenOffice print window to print.

#### 15.3.3 PPD driver for applications

PPD registration destination (Example: Adobe PageMaker)

- For PageMaker 6.0:
- Copy the PPD file to RSRCPPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.
- For PageMaker 6.5 and 7.0: Copy the PPD file to RSRC<Language>PPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.

## How to print

- 1 Select [File] [Print].
- 2 From the [PPD] box in the print window, select this machine.
- 3 Configure the [Paper] and [Features] settings for the printer.
- 4 Click the [Print] button to print.

# 15.4 If the bit number differs between the server operating system and client operating system

If Windows Server 2008/Server 2008 R2 is running on the print server and the bit count of the operating system differs between the print server and the client computer, an additional driver may not be able to be correctly installed to the print server.

To solve this problem, specify the setup information file (ntprint.inf) of the operating system with a different bit number when installing the additional driver on the print server.

The following describes how to install the additional driver by specifying a setup information file in a different computer from that the print server.

Reference

- Before starting this procedure, prepare to configure a different client computer from that of the print server and install the operating system that has a bit number different from that of the print server.
- On the print server side, the system drive of the client computer is assigned as the network drive. Configure the setting to share the drive to be assigned in advance.

#### 15.4.1 Installing an additional driver

This example shows the operation when installing Windows Server 2008 (32-bit version) on the print server and Windows Vista (64-bit version) in the client computer.

- 1 Configure the setting to share the drive (ordinarily, drive C) where the client computer's operating system is installed.
- 2 On the print server, the drive (example: "C") of the client computer, which is shared in Step 1, is assigned as the network drive (example: "z").
- 3 Install the 32-bit operating system driver on the print server.
- 4 Open the [Print Properties] window of the created printer.
- 5 Select the [Sharing] tab, and select the [Share This Printer] check box.
- 6 Click [Additional Drivers].

The additional drivers page appears.

- 7 Select the [x64] check box in the [Processor] column, and click [OK].
- 8 Specify the folder that contains the 64-bit operating system driver.

This displays a page to request a setup information file.

- 9 Click [Browse], and specify the setup information file (ntprint.inf) in the client computer to which the network drive is assigned.
  - → Specify the following file. "z:\Windows\System32\DriverStore\FileRepository\ntprint.inf xxx"
  - → In this path, "z" indicates the network drive that was assigned the above. "\_xxx" at the end of this path varies depending on the driver version.
  - → The setup information file may be stored at a different location depending on your client computer. If folder "amd64" resides in the same hierarchy as that of "ntprint.inf", specify a setup information file for 64-bit operating system under that folder. To additionally install a 32-bit operating system driver, specify a setup information file under folder "i386" that is in the same hierarchy as that of "ntprint.inf".
- **10** Click [Open].

Installation starts.

**11** When the installation completes, click [Close].

The additional installation of the 64-bit operating system driver is then completed.

# 15.5 Glossary

15

Term	Description
10Base-T/ 100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	A set of specifications under the Ethernet standards. Those cables that consist of twisted copper wire pairs are used. The transmission rates of 10Base-T, 100Base-TX and 1000Base-T are respectively 10Mbps, 100Mpbs and 1000Mbps.
Adobe® Flash®	Software or its file format developed by Adobe Systems Inc. (formerly by Macro- media, Inc.), used to create a content by compiling vector-graphic animations and sounds. The software allows handling interactive contents using keyboard or mouse. The
	files can be kept relatively compact and accessed from a Web browser with dedi- cated plug-in software.
AppleTalk	The generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.
bit	The abbreviation for binary digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A bit uses only a 0 or a 1 to indicate data.
BMP	The abbreviation for bitmap. This is a file format for saving image data. (The file ex- tension is ".bmp".) Commonly used on Windows platforms. BMP covers the color depth from mono- chrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). BMP images are not suitable for compressed storage.
Bonjour	A Macintosh network technology, automatically detecting a device connected to the network for automatic configuration. Previously called "Rendezvous", and has been changed to "Bonjour" since Mac OS X v10.4.
BOOTP	The abbreviation for Bootstrap Protocol. The protocol is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Instead of BOOTP, DHCP, an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is typically used today.
Brightness	Brightness of a display or other screen.
Byte	A byte indicates a unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A byte consists of eight bits.
Client	A computer using services provided by servers via the network.
Default Gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a "gateway" to access computers on different LANs.
DHCP	The acronym for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The protocol is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Just using a DHCP server to centrally manage IP addresses of the DHCP clients enables you to construct a network without IP address conflicts or other troubles.
DNS	The acronym for Domain Name System. DNS allows for obtaining the IP address corresponding to a host name in network environments. This system enables a user to access other computers on the network by specifying host names instead of elusive and non-intuitive IP addresses.
DPI (dpi)	The acronym for Dots Per Inch. A unit of resolution used for printers and scanners. This indicates the number of dots used to represent an inch. The higher this value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a peripheral device.
Ethernet	A standard for LAN transmission lines.
Frame type	A type of communication format used in NetWare environments. For mutual com- munication, the same frame type is required.
FTP	The acronym for File Transfer Protocol. This is a protocol used for transferring files via the Internet, an intranet or other TCP/IP network.
Gateway	Hardware and software used as the point where a network is connected to a net- work. A gateway not only connects networks but also changes data formats, ad- dresses, and protocols according to the connected networks.
Gray scale	A form of presenting monochrome image by using the gradation information shift- ing from black to white.
Hard disk	A large capacity storage device for storing data. The data is retained even after the power is turned off.

Term	Description
Host name	The name used to identify a device on a network.
HTTP	The acronym for HyperText Transfer Protocol. This is a protocol used to send or receive data between a Web server and a client (such as a Web browser). HTTP can exchange files such as images, sounds, and movies that are associated with documents, including their presentation formats and other information.
Install	To install hardware, operating systems, applications, printer drivers, or other software on to a computer.
IP Address	An address or a code used to identify an individual network device on the Internet. IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4), a protocol widely used today, adopts a 32-bit number for an IP address separated into four sections. An example of an IPv4 IP address is: 192.168.1.10. On the other hand, IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), the next generation protocol, adopts 128-bit IP addresses. An IP address is assigned to every computer or other device connected to the Internet.
IPP	The acronym for Internet Printing Protocol. This is a protocol used to send or re- ceive print data or control printers via the Internet or other TCP/IP network. IPP can also send and print data to printers in remote areas via the Internet.
IPX	One of the protocols used for NetWare. IPX runs in the network layer of the OSI reference model.
IPX/SPX	The abbreviation for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. This is a protocol developed by Novell, Inc., typically used in NetWare environ- ments.
LAN	The acronym for Local Area Network. This is a network constructed by connecting computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.
Local printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer.
LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Daemon. This is a platform-independent printer pro- tocol running on the TCP/IP network. The protocol was originally developed for BSD UNIX, and has become one of the printing protocols typically used among general computers.
LPR/LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. This is a printing meth- od implemented via networks, used for Windows NT or UNIX based systems. It uses TCP/IP to output printing data from Windows or UNIX to a printer on the net- work.
MAC address	MAC is the acronym for Media Access Control. A MAC address is an ID number unique to each Ethernet card, enabling sending or receiving data to or from other Ethernet cards. A Mac address is a 48-bit number. The first 24 bits are controlled by IEEE and used to allocate a unique number to each manufacture, whereas the latter 24 bits are used by each manufacturer to assign a unique number to each card.
Memory	A storage device used for storing data temporarily. Some types of memory retain data even after the power is turned off, while others not.
NDPS	The acronym for Novell Distributed Print Services. This provides a high perform- ance printing solution in NDS environments. Using NDPS for the print server sim- plifies and automates complicated management activities related to printer use. For example, you can print to a desired printer or automatically download the print- er driver for a newly installed printer. NDPS print servers also integrate manage- ment related to the network printers.
NDS	The acronym for Novell Directory Services. This allows the centralized manage- ment in a hierarchical structure of shared resources such as servers, printers and users information on the network, as well as the access privilege and other infor- mation related to the users.
NetBEUI	The abbreviation for NetBIOS Extended User Interface. This is a network protocol developed by IBM. NetBEUI enables you to construct a small-scale network simply by configuring computer names.
NetBIOS	The abbreviation for Network Basic Input Output System. This is a communication interface developed by IBM.
NetWare	A network operating system developed by Novell. This uses NetWare IPX/SPX for the communication protocol.
Nprinter/ Rprinter	A remote printer support module used when using a printer server in NetWare environments. Rprinter is used for NetWare 3.x, and Nprinter for NetWare 4.x.

Term	Description
OHP/OHT	A transparent sheet used for OHP (Overhead projector). This is used for presenta- tions.
OS	The acronym for Operating System. This is base software used to control the system of a computer. Windows, MacOS, or UNIX is an OS.
Outline font	A type of fonts represented using lines and curves to display an outline of a char- acter. Larger-size characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jag- ged edges.
PDF	The acronym for Portable Document Format. This is an electronically formatted document with file extension of ".pdf". PDF is a PostScript based format, and can be viewed using Adobe Acrobat Reader, a free viewer software.
PDL	The acronym for Page Description Language. This is a language used to instruct a page printer about images being printed on each page.
Peer-to-peer	A type of network where the connected devices can be communicate with each other without using a dedicated server.
Plug and play	A mechanism used to immediately detect a peripheral device when it is plugged into a computer, and search for an appropriate driver automatically, so that the de- vice becomes operable.
PostScript	A typical page-descriptive language developed by Adobe and commonly used for high quality printing.
PPD	The acronym for PostScript Printer Description. This is a file with the description of resolution, available paper sizes, and other information specific to a PostScript printer model.
Preview	A function allowing you to view a result image before being actually processed for printing or scanning.
Print job	A print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device.
Print queue	A software system used by a spooler to save generated print jobs.
Printer buffer	A memory area temporarily used for processing data of print jobs.
Printer driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a printer.
Property	Attribute information. When using a printer driver, different functions can be con- figured by utilizing its properties. By using properties of a file, you can check the attribute information about the file.
Protocol	A rule enabling a computer to communicate with other computers or peripherals.
Proxy server	A server that is installed to act as an intermediary connection between each client and different servers to effectively ensure security over the entire system for Inter- net connections.
PServer	A print server module available in NetWare environments. This module monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels print jobs.
Queue name	A logical printer name required for LPD/LPR printing. A name assigned to each device for allowing printing to the device via network.
Resolution	The resolution value indicates how much detail of an object can be reproduced precisely on an image or a print matter.
RGB	The acronym for Red, Green, and Blue. The RGB are the primary three colors used for monitor and other devices, producing any of the full colors by changing their brightness ratio.
RIP	The acronym for Raster Image Processor. RIP extracts picture images from text data created using PostScript or other page description language. This processor is usually integrated into a printer.
Samba	UNIX server software which uses SMB (Server Message Block) to make UNIX system resources available to Windows environments.
Screen font	A type of fonts used for displaying characters and symbols on a CRT or other mon- itor.
Shared printer	A printer connected to a server on the network and configured to be used by mul- tiple computers.

Term	Description
SLP	The acronym for Service Location Protocol. This is a protocol that provides capa- bilities such as finding services or automatic client configuration on the TCP/IP net- work.
SMB	The acronym for Server Message Block. This is a protocol for sharing files and printers mainly over the Windows network.
SMTP	The acronym for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. It is a protocol used to transmit or transfer E-mail messages.
SNMP	The acronym for Simple Network Management Protocol. This is a management protocol in the TCP/IP network environments.
Spool	The acronym for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line. Data to be output to a printer is not sent directly to the printer, but is temporarily stored in another location. The stored data is then sent collectively to the printer.
Subnet mask	A value used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). This is used to identify how many higher-order bits of an IP address are used for the network address.
TCP/IP	The acronym for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. It is a de facto standard protocol widely used for the Internet. An IP address is used to identify each network device.
Touch & Print	A feature that allows documents sent from the printer driver to be printed simply by placing your finger or IC card on the authentication unit connected to the printer when the user authentication is enabled. In order to use the Touch & Print feature, an authentication unit must be connected to this machine, and the vein patterns or the ID of the IC card for each user must be registered.
TrueType	A type of outline font developed by Apple and Microsoft, and currently used as a standard font type for Macintosh and Windows. This type of font can be used both for display and printing.
Uninstallation	To delete software installed on a computer
USB	The acronym for Universal Serial Bus. This is a general-purpose interface defined for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices with a computer.
Web browser	Software used to view Web pages. Typical Web browsers include Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator.
WINS	The acronym for Windows Internet Naming Service. This is a service, available in Windows environments, to call the name server responsible for conversion between a computer name and an IP address.
XPS	The abbreviation for XML Paper Specification. This is one of the electronic document formats developed by Microsoft Corporation. It is first supported in Windows Vista.



# 16 Index

# 16.1 Index by item

**Numerics** 

2-sided printing 12-16

#### A

Accessing 13-3 Account track 11-20, 13-6 Adding a printer 4-3, 4-14 Address registration 13-19, 13-27 Administrator mode 13-10, 13-20 Administrator settings 9-13, 12-36 AppleTalk 3-7, 3-8, 5-5, 5-9, 5-12 Assign account to acquire device info 12-53 Authentication 12-55 Authentication and printing 11-23 Authentication unit 11-29 Auto size switching between A4/A3 and LTR/LGR 12-9

#### В

Back cover 8-18, 9-17, 10-8 Back cover from post inserter 8-18, 9-18, 10-8 Banner printing 11-37 Banner sheet paper tray 12-20 Banner sheet setting 12-10 Basic tab 8-13 Binding direction adjustment 12-11 Binding margin 8-16 Binding position 8-15, 9-15, 10-8, 12-17 Bonjour 3-7, 5-4

## С

Cannot configure the settings 14-5 Cannot print 14-3 Capturing print data 12-57 Cellular phone or PDA 11-30 Cellular Phone or PDA Settings 12-56 Center stapling and folding 8-16, 9-15 Checking jobs 13-17 Collated 9-11, 10-7 Collating 8-14, 9-11 Combination 8-15, 10-8 Configure tab 8-5 Connection diagram 2-8 Connection methods 3-6 Control panel 2-5 Copy security 8-20, 8-23, 9-20 Cover mode tab 8-18 Cover mode/transparency interleave 9-17 CR/LF mapping 12-25

Custom page sizes 10-6 Custom size 8-13, 9-9 Customizing 13-19

#### D

Date 8-20, 9-20 Date/time 8-25, 9-22 Default operation selection 12-47 Default settings 8-5, 9-5, 10-4 Deleting secure print documents 12-40 Device option 8-5 Direct printing 13-18 Driver password encryption setting 12-59

#### Е

Edge enhancement 8-27, 9-24 Encryption passphrase 8-6, 9-14, 11-33 Error message 14-6 Ethernet 2-8

#### F

Fax driver 3-5 Fax settings 13-28 Finish tab 8-16 Finishing options 10-8 Flow of printing 2-4 Folding 8-17, 9-15, 10-8 Font settings 12-21 Font size 12-23 Front cover 8-18, 9-17, 10-8 Front cover from post inserter 8-18, 9-18, 10-8

# G

GDI demo page 15-10 General settings 10-7 Glossary 15-14 Glossy mode 8-27, 9-24, 10-8 Gray background text correction 12-13

## Н

Header/footer 8-20, 9-20, 9-23

#### I

ID & print deletion time 12-42 ID & print operation settings 12-46 ID & print settings 12-45 ID & print settings for deletion after printing 12-43 Image shift 8-16, 9-15 Installing 5-3 Interfaces 2-8

Interleaving OHP transparencies 8-19, 9-18, 10-8 IPP 4-7, 4-17, 5-7, 5-11 IPPS 3-6, 4-7, 4-17

#### L

Layout 10-7 Layout tab 8-15 Layout/finishing 9-14 Line width adjustment 12-12 Line/page 12-24 Linux 15-11 Local connection 2-10, 4-11, 4-19 Logging in 13-5, 13-8 Logging out 13-5, 13-7 LPD 5-6, 5-10, 5-13 LPR 3-6, 4-3, 4-14, 5-6, 5-10, 5-13

#### Μ

Mac 3-7 Mac OS 9.2 3-8 Macintosh 2-7, 5-3, 7-5 Maintenance 13-20 Mode 1 11-9 Mode 2 11-11 My tab 8-11 N

NetWare 3-8, 6-3 Network 13-24 Network connection 2-9 Network window 4-9 Number of copies 8-14, 9-11, 10-7, 12-6 Number of copies and pages 9-11

#### 0

Offsetting 8-14, 9-11, 10-8 **OpenAPI** settings 12-55 Operating environment 2-7, 13-3 Operating system 2-7 Option 9-5, 10-4 Orientation 9-10, 10-6 Original direction 12-7 Original orientation 8-13 Original size 8-13 Original Type 8-27, 9-24 OS 2-7 OS 10.2 3-7, 5-3 OS 10.3 3-7, 5-3 OS 10.4 3-7, 5-3 OS 10.5 3-7, 5-3 OS 10.6 3-7, 5-3 OS 9.2 2-7, 5-12, 7-5, 10-3 OS X 2-7, 5-3, 7-5, 9-3 Other tab 8-28 Output method 8-14, 9-11, 9-12, 10-8 Output tray 8-17, 9-16, 10-8

Output tray settings 12-39 Overlap width line 9-15 Overlay 8-19, 8-22

# Ρ

Page attributes 9-10, 10-6 Page number 8-20, 8-25, 9-20, 9-23 Pages 9-11, 10-7 PageScope Web Connection 13-3 Paper 10-6 Paper arrangement 8-17, 9-15 Paper size 8-13, 9-10, 12-15 Paper source 10-7 Paper tray 8-13, 9-16, 12-14 Paper tray/output tray 9-16 Paper type 8-13, 9-16 Paper view 9-8 Parameter details 8-11, 9-10, 10-6 Pattern 8-27 PCL driver 3-4, 8-3 PCL font list 15-8 PDL setting 12-5 Per page setting 8-18, 9-19 Plug and play 4-11, 4-19 Port 9100 4-3, 4-14 Poster mode 9-15 PostScript 3-4 PPD driver 3-4, 15-11 Print 8-3 Print type 8-15, 9-15, 10-8 Print/fax output setting 12-38 Printer controller 2-3 Printer driver 14-5 Printer drivers 3-4 Printer setting 13-26 Printer specific options 10-8 Printing 2-7, 9-3, 10-3, 11-39 Printing PS errors 12-26 Printing reports 12-28, 15-7 Printing without authentication 12-49 Printing XPS errors 12-51 Product specifications 15-3 Proof print 11-3 **Properties 8-5** PS driver 3-4, 8-3 PS font list 15-9 PSWC direct printing 12-52 Public user 13-9 Punching 8-16, 9-15, 10-8, 12-19

## Q

Quality 9-24 Quality tab 8-26

#### R Recalling jobs 11-4, 11-8, 11-15, 11-26 Registered user 13-9 Rendezvous 5-8 Rotating 180 degrees 8-15, 9-15 Х S Saving in user boxes 11-13 Ζ Scale 9-10, 10-6 Secure documents auto deletion time setting 12-41 Secure print only 12-58 Secure printing 11-6 Security 13-22 Selecting a printer 5-4, 5-12 Separating chapters 8-15, 9-15 Setting for each purpose 13-29 Settings 12-3 Setup 2-9 Skip job operation settings 12-44 Skipping blank pages 8-15 SMB 3-6, 4-3, 4-16 Spool settings 12-8 Stamp/composition 9-20 Stamp/composition tab 8-19 Stapling 8-16, 9-15, 10-8, 12-18 Structure of pages 13-14 Symbol set 12-22 System settings 13-21 Т TIFF image paper setting 12-29 Time 8-20, 9-20 Timeout 12-50 Toner save 8-27, 9-24 Troubleshooting 14-3 U Uninstalling 7-3 USB 2-8 User authentication 11-17, 13-6 User authentication/account track 13-23 User box 13-17, 13-25 User box administrator 13-13 User mode 13-16 User settings 12-3 V Verifying XPS digital signatures 12-27 Viewing information 13-16 W Watermark 8-19, 8-21 Web browser 13-4 Web service 3-6, 4-8 Windows 2-7, 7-3 Windows 7 3-6, 4-3

Windows Server 2003 3-7, 4-14

XPS driver 3-5, 8-3

Zoom 8-13

# 16.2 Index by button

Numerics 2-Sided Print 12-16

#### Α

A4/A3LTR/LGR Auto Switch 12-9 Account Track 9-12 Acquire Device Information 8-20 Add a printer 4-3 Administrator Settings 12-36 Assign Account to Acquire Device Info 12-53 Auth. Unit 11-26 Authentication 12-55 Authentication/Account Track 8-14, 11-20 Auto Delete Secure Document 12-41

## Β

Banner Paper Tray 12-20 Banner Printing 11-39 Banner Sheet Setting 12-10 Basic Settings 12-5 Binding Direction Adjustment 12-11 Binding Margin Settings 8-16 Binding Position 12-17

#### С

Cellular Phone/PDA Settings 12-56 Combination Details 8-15 Configuration Page 12-28 Copy Security 9-21 CR/LF Mapping 12-25

#### D

Default Operation Selection 12-47 Delete Secure Print Documents 12-40 Demo Page 12-28 Detail Settings 9-12 Driver Password Encryption Setting 11-33, 12-59

#### Е

Edit My Tab 8-12 Editing watermark 8-21

#### F

Font Settings 12-21 Font Size 12-23

#### G

Gray Background Text Correction 12-13

#### 

ID & Print Delete after Print Setting 12-43 ID & Print Delete Time 12-42 ID & Print Operation Settings 12-46 ID & Print Settings 12-45 ID & Print User Box 11-27 Image Shift Settings 8-16

#### L

Line Width Adjustment 12-12 Line/Page 12-24 Login 11-26, 13-9 Logout 13-7 M Mobile/PDA 11-31

#### Ν

Network Timeout 12-50 Number of Copies 12-6

#### 0

Obtain Device Information 8-6, 8-22, 8-24 OpenAPI Settings 12-55 Original Direction 12-7 Output Tray Settings 12-39

#### Ρ

Paper Setting 12-14 Paper Size 12-15 Paper Tray 12-14 Paper Tray Information 8-5 Paper View 8-10 PCL Font List 12-28 PCL Settings 12-21 PDL Setting 12-5 Preferences 8-3 Print 8-3, 9-3, 10-3 Print & Login 11-26 Print Data Capture 12-57 Print PS Errors 12-26 Print Reports 12-28 Print without Authentication 12-49 Print XPS Errors 12-51 Print/Fax Output Setting 12-38 Printer Settings 12-5, 12-50 Printer View 8-10 Properties 8-3 PS Font List 12-28 PS Setting 12-26 PSWC Direct Print 12-52 Punch 12-19

#### Q

Quality Adjustment 8-27, 9-24

# S

Save Custom Size 8-7 Secure Print Only 12-58 Secure Print User Box 11-8 Skip Job Operation Settings 12-44 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP 12-8 Staple 12-18 Symbol Set 12-22

# T TIFF Image Paper Setting 12-29 To Login Screen 13-7 U Uninstall 7-5 USB Timeout 12-50 User Authentication 9-12 User Box 11-8, 11-26 User Settings 8-14, 12-3 Utility/Counter 12-3 V Verify XPS Digital Signature 12-27 X

XPS Settings 12-27